



beginner's mandarin chinese

elizabeth scurfield and
song lianyi

For over 60 years, more than
50 million people have learnt over
750 subjects the **teach yourself**
way, with impressive results.

be where you want to be
with **teach yourself**

For UK order enquiries: please contact Bookpoint Ltd, 130 Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4SB. Telephone: +44 (0) 1235 827720. Fax: +44 (0) 1235 400454. Lines are open 09.00–17.00, Monday to Saturday, with a 24-hour message answering service. Details about our titles and how to order are available at www.teachyourself.co.uk

For USA order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Customer Services, PO Box 545, Blacklick, OH 43004-0545, USA. Telephone: 1-800-722-4726. Fax: 1-614-755-5645.

For Canada order enquiries: please contact McGraw-Hill Ryerson Ltd, 300 Water St, Whitby, Ontario, L1N 9B6, Canada. Telephone: 905 430 5000. Fax: 905 430 5020.

Long renowned as the authoritative source for self-guided learning – with more than 50 million copies sold worldwide – the **teach yourself** series includes over 500 titles in the fields of languages, crafts, hobbies, business, computing and education.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data: a catalogue record for this title is available from the British Library.

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: on file.

First published in UK 1996 by Hodder Education, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH.

First published in US 1996 by The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.

This edition published 2003.

The **teach yourself** name is a registered trade mark of Hodder Headline.

Copyright © 1996, 2003 Elizabeth Scurfield and Song Lianyi

In UK: All rights reserved. Apart from any permitted use under UK copyright law, no part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording, or any information, storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher or under licence from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited. Further details of such licences (for reprographic reproduction) may be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Limited, of 90 Tottenham Court Road, London, W1T 4LP.

In US: All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Typeset by Graphicraft Limited, Hong Kong.

Printed in Great Britain for Hodder Education, a division of Hodder Headline, 338 Euston Road, London, NW1 3BH, by Cox & Wyman Ltd, Reading, Berkshire.

The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher and the author have no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content will remain relevant, decent or appropriate.

Hodder Headline's policy is to use papers that are natural, renewable and recyclable products and made from wood grown in sustainable forests. The logging and manufacturing processes are expected to conform to the environmental regulations of the country of origin.

Impression number 20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13
 Year 2010 2009 2008 2007 2006

about the course		vii
pronunciation guide		xiv
01	nǐ hǎo! nǐ hǎo ma? hello! how are you? saying <i>hello</i> and <i>goodbye</i> • exchanging greetings • saying <i>please</i> and <i>thank you</i> • making a simple apology • observing basic courtesies	1
02	nǐ jiào shénme? what's your name? saying who you are • making simple introductions • asking who other people are • addressing people correctly • denying something	11
03	nǐ shì nǎ guó rén? where are you from? saying where you come from and what nationality you are • asking for and giving an address • numbers 0–10 • asking for and giving a telephone number • filling out a form	21
04	nǐ yǒu xiōngdì jiěmèi ma? do you have brothers and sisters? talking about yourself and your family • asking other people about their family • asking someone if they are married and/or have children • saying how old	32

05	you are • asking how old somebody is • counting up to 100 jǐ diǎn le? <i>what time is it now?</i> 43 days of the week • months of the year • telling the time • asking what time it is • useful expressions of time • giving the date • making arrangements	12	zài lǚguǎn <i>at the hotel</i> 133 checking into a hotel • saying if something is wrong • making requests • making complaints	133
06	nǐ jīntiān xiǎng zuò shénme? <i>what do you want to do today?</i> 55 saying what you want to do • understanding and asking for advice • expressing similarities • comparing and contrasting	13	huǒchē, piào hé chūzūchē <i>trains, tickets and taxis</i> 143 asking for and understanding information about trains • understanding train announcements • buying train tickets • useful time expressions	143
07	duōshao qián? <i>how much is it?</i> 68 asking for things (in shops) • asking the price • stating quantities • numbers 100–1,000 • expressing the distance between two points	14	yúlè huódòng <i>free time and entertainment</i> 153 saying what you like doing in your free time • asking somebody what they would like to do • sports and hobbies • making arrangements • summer and winter, indoor and outdoor activities	153
08	zěnmeyàng? <i>what's it like?</i> 83 asking about sizes • talking about clothes and shoes • describing things • expressing likes and dislikes • making comparisons	15	zài yóujú hé huàn qián <i>at a post office and changing money</i> 164 buying stamps • sending and collecting a parcel • making a long distance call • sending a fax • numbers above 1,000	164
09	qù . . . zěnmē zǒu? <i>how do I get to . . . ?</i> 95 asking for and understanding directions • using public transport • asking people if they have ever done something • expressing how long something happens for	16	zuò kè <i>being a guest</i> 174 making a toast • making appropriate remarks and responses during a meal	174
10	nín xiǎng chī shénme? <i>what would you like to eat?</i> 108 ordering a meal and drinks • paying the bill • saying you have given up something (such as smoking) • more about verb endings	17	kàn yīshēng <i>seeing a doctor</i> 185 describing your symptoms to the doctor or pharmacist • understanding the instructions on the medicine bottle • acupuncture, Chinese herbal medicine, tàijíquán and qìgōng	185
11	wǒmen kànkàn Hànzì ba! <i>let's look at Chinese characters!</i> 121 the structure of Chinese characters • the rules of writing • writing the numbers 1–99, the days of the week, the date and the time	18	duìfù wèntí <i>coping with problems</i> 195 asking for help • key expressions to describe your problem • expressions required in an emergency • the basic Highway Code in China	195
		19	xuéxí Zhōngwén <i>learning Chinese</i> 204 basic vocabulary to describe the characteristics of a language • talking about your future plans • responding to compliments or forthright remarks	204

20	lǚxíng hé tiānqì <i>travel and weather</i>	212
	saying how to get somewhere • Chinese festivals	
	• regional differences • talking about the weather	
21	tán gǎnxiǎng <i>experiences, feelings and reflections</i>	221
	talking about things that happened in the past	
	• asking people about their impressions	
	• expressing regret • expressing satisfaction	
	• writing a thank you note	
	taking it further	231
	key to the exercises	233
	Chinese–English vocabulary	247
	English–Chinese vocabulary	260

Dedications

In memory of a much loved mother, Ella Jessie Scurfield, whose loving spirit and quiet courage will always be with me.

To Rong, my wife, whose support has been invaluable.

Acknowledgements

Our grateful thanks to all those who made this publication possible. In particular we wish to thank our two editors, Virginia Catmur and Rebecca Green, for all their encouragement and support.

About the authors

Elizabeth Scurfield graduated with a First Class Honours degree in Chinese from the School of Oriental and African Studies in London. She has over 30 years' experience of teaching Chinese to beginners successfully. She is former Chair of the Department of Modern Languages at the University of Westminster in London.

Song Lianyi grew up and was educated in Beijing. He has taught Chinese as a foreign language for more than 13 years. He is at present Lecturer in Chinese at the School of Oriental and African Studies, London. He completed his PhD in language teaching techniques at the Institute of Education, University of London.

Teach Yourself Beginner's Mandarin Chinese is the right course for you if you are a complete beginner or feel that you need to start back at the beginning again to rebuild your confidence. It is a self-study course which will help you to understand and speak Chinese sufficiently well to function effectively in basic everyday situations, both business and social. The course will also offer you an insight into Chinese culture and there is even an opportunity for you to find out something about the Chinese writing system if you want to.

Which Chinese will you be learning?

In one form or another, Chinese is the language most spoken in the world. It has many different spoken forms, but they are all written in almost exactly the same way, the difference being that the simplified script is used in the People's Republic of China and in Singapore and that full-form characters are used in Taiwan and Hong Kong (this may change in the future in the case of Hong Kong). The characters used in this book are always in the simplified script. For more information on the Chinese script, you can refer to *Teach Yourself Beginner's Chinese Script* and to *Teach Yourself Chinese*.

More than 70 per cent of Chinese people speak the northern dialect so the national language is based on this. More Chinese speakers can understand this national language than any other form of Chinese so it is what you will be learning in this book. In China it is called **Pǔtōnghuà** 'common speech', but it is sometimes referred to in the West as Modern Standard Chinese.

What is romanization?

Chinese cannot be written using a phonetic alphabet in the way that European languages can. It is written in characters. You will find out more about characters in Unit 11. Various ways have been devised for representing Chinese sounds alphabetically. The standard form in use today is known as **pīnyīn** (literally ‘spell sound’) and is what we have used in this book. In 1958 **pīnyīn** was adopted as the official system of romanization in the People’s Republic of China. Please note that **pīnyīn** is not an accurate phonetic transliteration of Chinese sounds for English speakers.

How the course works

The book is divided into two main parts. Units 1 to 10 introduce you to the basic structures and grammatical points you’ll need in everyday situations. These units should be taken in order as each builds on the previous ones.

Units 12 to 21 deal with everyday situations such as booking into a hotel, changing money, buying tickets, seeing a doctor, travelling and being entertained in a Chinese home. They give you the opportunity to put into practice and consolidate the language you have learnt in the first ten units. You can take these units in any order, although the vocabulary does build up from unit to unit.

A few words about the recording

This book can be successfully used on its own, but you are advised to obtain and use the accompanying recording if at all possible. This will help you to pronounce Chinese correctly and to acquire a more authentic accent. The recorded dialogues and exercises will also give you plenty of practice in understanding and responding to basic Chinese. The **Pronunciation guide** and the new words in the first few units plus items such as the days of the week, the months of the year and simple numbers are all recorded. This will help you to speak Chinese correctly in the important early stages of your study. Readers without the recording will find that there are some units which contain an exercise that cannot be done with the book alone, but a written alternative is always provided.

About Units 1–10

Each unit starts by telling you what you are going to learn in that unit. The **Before you start** section prepares you for the unit ahead. Then there is an easy exercise **Let’s try** to get you speaking straight away.

Key words and phrases contain the most important words and phrases from the unit. Try to learn them by heart. They will be used in that unit and in later units. There are various tips throughout the book to help you learn new words.

Dialogue. Move on to the dialogues once you have read the new words a few times. The dialogues will show you how the new words are used and hopefully reinforce them. If you have the recording, listen to each dialogue once or twice without stopping or read through it without looking anything up. You don’t have to understand every word to get the gist of it.

Now, using the pause button, break the dialogue into manageable chunks and try repeating each phrase out loud. This will help you gain a more authentic accent. If you don’t have the recording, use a ruler or a book mark to cover part of the dialogue so you can concentrate on a small bit at a time. The most important thing in either case is to **speak out loud** because this will help you gain confidence in speaking Chinese.

Learning tips give you advice on everything from how to master vocabulary to how to improve your listening and reading skills and develop confidence in speaking.

Language notes. This section provides you with the nuts and bolts of the language. It goes over all the main grammar and structures for the units along with plenty of examples. Once you are confident about a particular grammar point, try making up your own examples.

Practice/Exercises. Each exercise in this section helps you practise one or more of the points introduced in the **Language notes** section. For some exercises you will need to listen to the recording. It is not essential to have the recording to complete this course and most of these listening exercises can also be completed without them. However, listening to the recording will make your learning easier and provide more variety.

Quick review, at the end of each unit, gives you the opportunity to test yourself on what you have learnt in that unit. In Unit 10

you are given the chance to test yourself on Units 1–10 with a **Halfway review** and to go back over anything you're not sure about. At the end of Unit 21 there is a **Final review**, you will be surprised at how much you have learnt.

i These sections are short notes in English which give you an insight into different aspects of Chinese culture and society and are usually linked to the situations being covered in that particular unit.

In each unit you will find at least one useful sign written in Chinese characters (**Hànzì**) so you can familiarize yourself with what they look like even though you haven't actually learnt any characters.

About Units 12–21

These units give you the opportunity to practise what you have learnt in meaningful and useful situations. The first page of each unit tells you what you are going to learn and under **Revise before you start** there is a check list of the structures you have already learnt which will reappear in that unit. This gives you the opportunity to look at some, or all, of these again and to go over them so you feel fully confident before beginning the unit. You will find that some structures come up time and time again so that you will not find it necessary to revise them after a while. You will also find a short text in Chinese (except for Unit 13 which is in English) about the topics in each unit followed by a comprehension exercise.

Cartoons and proverbs. You will find cartoons in some of the units which will give you an insight into Chinese humour and hopefully make you laugh! We have also included some proverbs (written in Chinese characters and in **pīnyīn**) which have some relevance to the topic and add some cross-cultural interest. These are short phrases which have their origins in classical Chinese.

Quick review (As in Units 1–10)

Key to the exercises. The answers to the **Practice/Exercises**, **Let's try**, **Quick review**, **Halfway review** and **Final review** can all be found at the back of the book. Do remember that variations are possible in some of the answers but we couldn't include them all.

Unit 11 – Let's look at Chinese characters!

Contrary to what most people believe, Chinese is not a difficult language to speak – particularly at beginner's level. Pronunciation and grammar are generally straightforward even if they require you to do a few things you're not used to. Even tones are not intrinsically difficult and can be fun, though they do involve a lot of time and practice.

Nobody can say, however, that learning to read and write Chinese characters is easy – fascinating yes, but not easy. That is why we have written this book in **pīnyīn**, so that the learner can get straight down to speaking Chinese without the barrier of an unknown form of writing.

Unit 11 is a special unit designed to give you the chance to find out something about the origin of Chinese characters and to have a taste of what's involved in reading and writing them. This unit is designed as a 'one-off' so that those of you who would rather concentrate solely on listening and speaking can miss it out without it affecting your understanding of other units.

At the back of the book

At the back of the book is a reference section which contains:

Key to the exercises

A **Chinese–English vocabulary** list containing all the words in the course.

An **English–Chinese vocabulary** list with the most useful words you'll need when expressing yourself in Chinese.

How to be successful at learning Chinese

1 **Little and often** is far more effective than a long session every now and then. Try to do 20–30 minutes a day if you can. If you can't manage that, then set yourself a minimum of 2–3 times a week. Try to make it at roughly the same time each day – when you get up, or at lunchtime, or before you go to bed for instance. This will make it easier for you to get into the habit of studying regularly.

- 2 **Revise and test yourself regularly.** Find a balance between moving through the book and revising what you have already learnt. If you move forward too quickly, you will find later units difficult and you will get discouraged. Try to avoid this.
- 3 **Hear yourself speak!** If at all possible, find yourself a quiet place to study where you can speak out loud. You need to build up your speaking and listening skills and your confidence, so make it as easy and as comfortable for yourself as you can.
- 4 **Find opportunities to speak Chinese.** You don't have to go to China to do this. Join a Chinese class to practise your Chinese with other people, find a Chinese native speaker to help you (but make sure he or she speaks **Pǔtōnghuà**) and find out about Chinese clubs, societies, and so on.
- 5 **Don't be too harsh on yourself!** Learning a language is a gradual process – you have to keep at it. Don't expect to remember every item of vocabulary and every new structure all at once. The important thing is to get your meaning across. Making mistakes in Chinese will not stop a Chinese person understanding you.

But most of all remember that learning and using a foreign language is fun, particularly when you find you can use what you have learnt in real situations.

Symbols and abbreviations

▶ This indicates that the recording is needed for the following section. (But often there is an alternative way of completing the section if you don't have the recording.)

i This indicates information about Chinese culture and society.

(sing)	singular	(<i>lit.</i>)	literally
(pl)	plural	(MW)	measure word

Punctuation

Chinese punctuation is very similar to that of English but a pause-mark (、) is used in lists instead of a comma, even if the list only has two items in it. A comma is used for longer pauses.

O

1

hello!
how are you?
nǐ hǎo!
nǐ hǎo ma?

In this unit you will learn

- how to say *hello* and *goodbye*
- how to exchange greetings
- how to say *please* and *thank you*
- how to make a simple apology
- how to observe basic courtesies

Before you start

Read about the course on pp. vii–xiii. This gives useful advice on how to make the best of this course.

Everybody learns differently. You need to find the way which works best for you. You will find some useful learning tips in each unit.

Make sure you have your recording handy as you will need this to listen to the **Pronunciation guide** and **Dialogues**.

If you don't have the recording, use the **Pronunciation guide** on pp. xiv–xviii to help you with the pronunciation of new words and phrases.

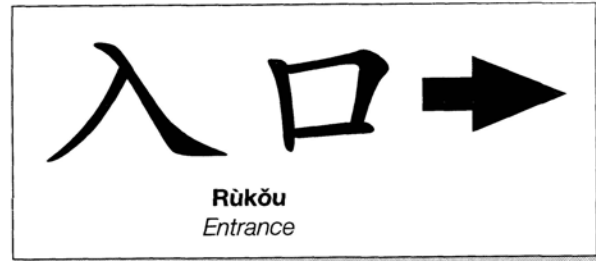
It's a good idea to listen to the **Pronunciation guide** all the way through and to practise the Chinese tones before starting Unit 1. This way you can make the most of the dialogues. More advice on p. 6.

Remember that studying for 20 minutes regularly is much more effective than occasionally spending two hours in one go.

Try following this study guide and adapt it to your needs as you go along:

- 1 Listen to the **Dialogues** once or twice without the book (read them if you haven't got the recording).
- 2 Go over each one, bit by bit, in conjunction with the **Key words and phrases** and **Learning tips** underneath the dialogues.
- 3 Study the **Language notes** very carefully and make sure that you understand them.
- 4 Make sure you understand the **Learning tips** on how to pronounce and how to learn.
- 5 Read the **i** sections.
- 6 Go back to the **Dialogues** and **Key words and phrases** and listen and study for as long as it takes you to grasp them. This time use the pause button. Try reading a new word or phrase out loud after the speaker, then play it again to check your progress.
- 7 Do the **Practice** section and check your answers in **Key to the exercises** at the back of the book. Test yourself with the **Quick review**.

Now you are ready to start!



Key words and phrases

bù	not
bú yòng xiè	not at all (lit. no need thank)
bú zài	not at; to be not at / in
duibuqǐ	excuse me / I'm sorry
hǎo	good, well
... hǎo ma?	How is / are ... ?
hěn	very
jīntiān	today
lái	to come
lǎoshī	teacher
ma	(question particle)
míngtiān	tomorrow
míngtiān jiàn	see you tomorrow
nǐ	you (sing)
Nǐ hǎo! (sing)	Hello!
nǐmen	you (pl)
Nǐmen hǎo! (pl)	Hello!
Qǐng jìn!	Please come in.
Qǐng wèn, ... ?	May I ask ... ?
Qǐng zuò!	Please sit down.
tā/tā	she / he
tàitai	Mrs; wife
xiānsheng	Mr; husband; gentleman
xiǎo	little, young, small
xièxie	thank you; to thank
zài	at; to be at / in
zàijiàn	goodbye

Learning tips

Read the words and expressions out loud. Concentrate on the pronunciation. Turn back to the **Pronunciation guide** on pp. xiv–xviii and check anything you need to. Especially check out the four tones and the neutral tone. They're quite easy to get the hang of after a little practice.

If you have the recording, listen to the words and repeat them after the speaker using the pause button.

Dialogues

Listen to people saying *hello*, *thank you* and *goodbye* in Chinese. Press the pause button after each person has spoken and repeat out loud.

Dialogue 1 Saying 'hello'

Mr Wang is a tourist guide. He prefers to be called **Xiǎo Wáng** (*lit.* little Wang) as he is only 28 years old, though his full name is Wáng Jījūn. When Mr and Mrs Green see Xiǎo Wáng, they greet him in Chinese.

Mrs Green Nǐ hǎo,
Xiǎo Wáng!
Mr Green Xiǎo Wáng,
nǐ hǎo!
Xiǎo Wáng Gélin xiānsheng,
Gélin tàitai,
nǐmen hǎo!
Mrs Green Nǐ tàitai hǎo ma?
Xiǎo Wáng Tā hěn hǎo,
xièxie.



Try saying two 3rd tones together. Difficult isn't it? Both *nǐ* (*you*) and *hǎo* (*good*) are 3rd tones but when said together *nǐ* is a 2nd tone. This was explained more fully in the **Pronunciation guide** on p. xviii.

Neutral tones

Some syllables or words in Chinese are toneless or have what is called a neutral tone. The *-sheng* of *xiānsheng*, the *-men* in *nǐmen*, and the question particle *ma* in the dialogue above are good examples of this.

Dialogue 2 Saying 'goodbye'

When Mr and Mrs Green have finished their visit, they thank Xiǎo Wáng and say goodbye to him.

Mr Green Xiǎo Wáng,
xièxie nǐ.
Mrs Green Xièxie nǐ,
Xiǎo Wáng.
Xiǎo Wáng Bú yòng xiè.
Mr Green Zàijiàn.
Xiǎo Wáng Zàijiàn.
Mrs Green Zàijiàn.



How to pronounce q

This is not at all like a *q* in English as in *queen*. *Q* in Chinese is pronounced like the *j* in *jeans* but with air behind it. It is rather like the *ch* in *cheetah* but with the corners of the mouth drawn back as far as they can go. Refer back to the **Pronunciation guide** for more help.

Dialogue 3

Mr Green comes to see his Chinese visitor. He knocks at the door.



Lǐ Qǐng jìn.
Green (*enters the room*)
Lǐ Gélin xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo!
Green Nǐ hǎo, Lǐ xiānsheng.
Lǐ Qǐng zuò.
Green Xièxie.
Lǐ Gélin tàitai hǎo ma?
Green Tā hěn hǎo. Xièxie.

Dialogue 4

Frank goes to the teachers' office to look for his teacher.

- Frank Qǐng wèn, Zhāng lǎoshī zài ma?
 Lǐ lǎoshī Duìbuqǐ, tā bú zài.
 Frank Tā jīntiān lái ma?
 Lǐ lǎoshī Bù lái. Tā míngtiān lái.
 Frank Xièxie nǐ.
 Lǐ lǎoshī Bú yòng xiè. Míngtiān jiàn.
 Frank Míngtiān jiàn.

How to practise tones

- 1 When you are practising words individually, pay attention to the tone and try to reproduce it. Go back and look at **Tones** on pp. xvi–xviii where you will find some useful hints on how to say each of the four tones.
- 2 When you are repeating phrases or sentences as in the dialogue, pay more attention to the shape of the whole sentence and copy that rather than each individual tone.
- 3 Don't worry if you find the idea of tones rather daunting at first – you will soon get used to them!

Language notes

1 Mr and Mrs

In Chinese the surname or family name always comes first. Traditionally this is the most important thing about your identity. The Chinese have always placed much emphasis on the family. Your title appears after your surname:

Gélín xiānsheng	Mr Green
Gélín tàitai	Mrs Green
Wáng lǎoshī	Teacher Wang

2 Greetings

Nǐ hǎo can be used at any time to say *Hello* or *How do you do?*. You will come across other greetings which refer specifically to the morning or the evening, such as when wishing somebody goodnight.

3 Asking somebody to do something

Qǐng is used when you want to ask somebody to do something. You use the verb **qǐng** (*to invite/request*) plus the word for whatever you want them to do. Of course **qǐng** could be translated as **please** in such cases.

Qǐng jìn. *Please come in.*
 Qǐng zuò. *Please sit down.*

You use the verb **wèn** (*to ask*) when you want to ask a question.

Wèn wèntí *Ask (a) question(s)*
 Qǐng wèn *May I ask . . . ?*

4 Hǎo Adjective or verb?

The answer is both! **Hǎo** is both an adjective (a word that describes a noun) and a verb (a word that tells you what a person, animal or thing does, or is). However, Chinese adjectives can also act as verbs so: **hǎo** means *to be good, to be well*, as well as *fine, good, OK*:

Nǐ hǎo. *How do you do. / How are you?*
 Tā hěn hǎo. *He/she is (very) well. /
 He/she is (very) good.*

But:

hǎo tàitai *a good wife*
 hǎo lǎoshī *a good teacher*

The use of **hěn** in **hěn hǎo** is *not* optional. If you do not use it, a comparison is implied. **Hěn** carries a lot less weight than the English 'very' unless you stress it.

5 You like me? I like you!

Pronouns (words used in place of nouns to refer to a person) are very easy in Chinese: **Wǒ** means *me* as well as *I*. **Tā** means *him, her, it* as well as *he, she* or *it*. To make them plural you simply add **-men**. The table below will make this clearer:

wǒ	<i>I, me</i>	wǒmen	<i>we, us</i>
nǐ	<i>you (sing)</i>	nǐmen	<i>you (pl)</i>
tā	<i>he, she, it, him, her</i>	tāmen	<i>they, them</i>

Although *he, she* and *it* are all pronounced **tā**, each of them is written with a different character. This only affects the written

language (see Unit 11), so there is absolutely nothing to worry about.

6 Simple questions with *ma*?

To make a question from any statement you just put *ma* at the end of it.

Tā míngtiān lái.	<i>She will come tomorrow.</i>
Tā míngtiān lái ma?	<i>Is she coming tomorrow?</i>
Wáng lǎoshī zài.	<i>Teacher Wang is around.</i>
Wáng lǎoshī zài ma?	<i>Is Teacher Wang around?</i>

7 How to say 'no'!

To make a verb negative in Chinese all you have to do is put *bù* in front of it. There is only **one** exception to this rule which you will meet in Unit 2. (The tone change on *bù* is explained on p. 15.)

Nǐ hǎo.	<i>You're well/good.</i>
Nǐ bù hǎo.	<i>You are not well/not good.</i>
Tā zài.	<i>He/she's here.</i>
Tā bú zài.	<i>He/she's not here.</i>

8 Word order that's different but not difficult!

Basic Chinese word order is the same as in English,

I like you
Subject Verb Object

but in English, you say: *He is coming tomorrow.* Whereas in Chinese, you say:

Tā míngtiān lái. *He tomorrow comes.*

To sum up, time words like *today, tomorrow, Wednesday, 6 o'clock* come **before** the verb in Chinese. Other words that come before the verb are the negative *bù*, and words such as *yě* (*also*) and *hěn* (*very*).

i Greetings

Traditionally the Chinese neither shake hands nor kiss when they meet or say goodbye. The custom was to clasp your hands together at chest height and as you move them very slightly backwards and

forwards you bow your head over them. The lower you bow your head, the higher the status of the other person. With the growing influence of the West, however, shaking hands is becoming more common.

'Please' and 'thank you'

Qǐng (*please*) and *xièxie* (*thank you*) are used much less frequently in Chinese than in English, but it is always better to use them too much rather than too little!

Practice

1 What do you say? Choose the most appropriate response for a from the first four boxes. Do the same for b and c.

a When you greet a friend, you say:

Nǐ hǎo Zàijiàn Bú yòng xiè Xièxie

b When you thank someone, you say:

Zàijiàn Nǐ hǎo Xièxie Bú yòng xiè

c When someone thanks you for your help, you respond by saying:

Nǐ hǎo Bú yòng xiè Zàijiàn Xièxie

2 Responding to a Chinese person. To help you out, the first letter of the correct response is already put in.

Example: Qǐng jìn. – Xièxie.

- a Nǐ hǎo! N _____ !
 b Xièxie nǐ. B _____ .
 c Qǐng zuò. X _____ .
 d Zàijiàn! Z _____ !

3 This time you begin and the Chinese person responds. Now you're on your own.

- a _____ . Nǐ hǎo!
 b Lǐ tàitai _____ ? Tā hěn hǎo. Xièxie nǐ.
 c Lǐ xiānsheng _____ ? Duìbuqǐ, tā bú zài.
 d _____ . Bú yòng xiè.

4 What would you put in each of the gaps to make them into words or phrases?

Example: Duì ___ qǐ. – Duìbuqǐ.

- | | |
|-------------|-----------------|
| a Xiè ___. | e Qǐng ___. |
| b ___ xiè. | f ___ zuò. |
| c ___ jiàn! | g ___ hǎo. |
| d ___ jiàn! | h ___ hǎo ___ ? |

5 Match the sentences on the left to those on the right.

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| a Tāmen hěn hǎo. | i They won't be in tomorrow. |
| b Tāmen jīntiān bú zài. | ii They will come today. |
| c Tāmen jīntiān lái. | iii They are not in today. |
| d Tāmen míngtiān bú zài. | iv They are very well. |

▶ Quick review

Now you've arrived at the end of Unit 1. What would you say in the following situations:

- You meet your Chinese friend, Mr Li, and you want to say hello.
- Then you ask how his wife is.
- You are a little bit late and you say you are sorry.
- Thank your friend (for his/her help).
- When he/she thanks you, say *You are welcome*.
- When you take your leave, what do you say?

You'll find the answers to the **Quick review** in the **Key to the exercises** at the end of the book. If you got them correct, you are ready to move on to Unit 2. If you found the review difficult, spend more time revising this unit.



欢迎 Huānyíng
Welcome



再见 Zàijiàn
Goodbye

02

nǐ jiào
shénme?
what's your name?

In this unit you will learn

- how to say who you are
- how to make simple introductions
- how to ask who other people are
- how to address people correctly
- how to deny something

Before you start

There is a lot of practice with asking questions in this unit. Try to learn some of the questions by heart as they will be very useful. Remember what was said about tones in Unit 1 in the section **How to practise tones** on p. 6.

▶ Let's try

A Chinese visitor has knocked on the door of your office.

- What would you call out?
- How would you greet him when he comes through the door?
- How would you ask him to sit down?
- At the end of your talk you show him to the door. What do you say to him? (You have arranged to see him again tomorrow.)

Learning tips

Here are some hints for learning vocabulary. See which one works best for you:

- Practise saying the words out loud as you read them.
- Cover up the English and see if you can remember what any of the Chinese words mean.
- Cover up the Chinese and see if the English words jolt your memory.
- Listen to the recording over and over again.
- Write the words out several times.
- Study the new words from beginning to end then start from the bottom and work back up again.
- Group the words in a way that will help you to remember them, such as all the verbs together, all the countries, and the language which is spoken in each one.
- Copy the words with their tone marks on to one side of a small card with their English equivalent on the other. Go through them looking at the Chinese first and giving the English word and then vice versa. If you get one wrong, put it back in the pile and have another go at it. You can also mix up the English and Chinese.

▶ Key words and phrases

dāngrán	of course
guì	expensive, honourable
Nín guì xìng?	What's your (honourable) name?
háizi	child / children
hui	can, to be able to
jiào	to call / be called
méi	no, not, (have not)
méi guānxi	it's OK / it doesn't matter
míngzi	name
nà/nèi (used interchangeably)	that
nán	male
Nǐ ne?	And you?
nín	you (polite form)
péngyou	friend
piàoliang	beautiful
rènshi	recognize, know (people)
shéi/shuí?	who?
shénme?	what?
shì	to be
shuō	to speak, to say
wǒ	I, me
wǒde/nǐde/nínde/tāde	my, your, his / her
xiǎojie	miss
xìng	surname
yě	also
yìdiǎn(r)	a little
Yīngwén	English (language)
yǒu	to have
zhè/zhèi (used interchangeably)	this
zhēn	real / really
Zhōngwén	Chinese (language)
Nǐ/tā jiào shénme (míngzi)?	What is your / his / her name?
Wǒ/tā jiào ...	I am / he is / she is called ...
Wǒ/nǐ/tā (bú) shì ...	I am / you are / he is / she is (not) ...
Zhè/nà (bú) shì ...	This / that is (not) ...
Tā shì shéi?	Who is he / she?
Tā shì bu shì ... ?	Is he / she ... (or not)?

Common Chinese surnames

Zhāng

张

Wáng

王

Lǐ

李

Zhào

赵

Liú

刘

Chén

陈

Lín

林

Wú

吴

Guō

郭

Zhèng

郑

Learning tips

- 1 Refer back to the **Pronunciation guide** to help you pronounce the surnames above. Repeat them out loud several times.
- 2 If you have the recording, listen to the names and repeat them after the speaker.

Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Listen to or read the dialogue and see how you ask what another person's name is in Chinese.



Jane Nín guì xìng?
 Chén Wǒ xìng Chén. Nín ne?
 Jane Wǒ xìng Lord. Zhè shì nín de háizi ma?
 Chén Bú shì. Wǒ méi yǒu háizi. Zhè shì Lǐ tàitai de háizi.
 Jane (to the boy) Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi?
 Child Wǒ jiào Pàn Pan.

Dialogue 2 At a conference

White Zhèng xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo!
 Cháng Wǒ xìng Cháng, bú xìng Zhèng. Wǒ jiào Cháng Zhèng.
 White Duìbuqǐ, Cháng xiānsheng.
 Cháng Méi guānxi. White xiānsheng, nǐ yǒu mei yǒu Zhōngwén míngzi?
 White Yǒu. Wǒ jiào Bái Bǐdé.
 Cháng Bái xiānsheng, nǐ huì bu huì shuō Yīngwén?
 White Dāngrán huì. Cháng xiānsheng, nǐ yě huì shuō Yīngwén ma?
 Cháng Huì yìdiǎn.



Tone of bù

Bù (*not*) is normally a 4th tone, but it becomes a 2nd tone before another 4th tone. When this happens it is marked as such in the book, such as **bú xìng** not **bù xìng**. It is toneless in such expressions as **huì bu huì** (see Dialogue 2).

Dialogue 3

How do you introduce yourself and somebody else? Find out in this dialogue.

Bái Nà shì shéi? Nǐ rènshi bu rènshi tā?
 Wú Rènshi. Tā shì Guō xiǎojie.
 Bái Tā zhēn piàoliang. (walks over to the girl)
 Bái Nǐ hǎo! Wǒ jiào Bái Bǐdé. Nǐ ne?
 Guō Nǐ hǎo! Wǒ jiào Guō Yùjié. (A man walks over to her and hands her a drink.)
 Guō Zhè shì wǒ de nán péngyou. Tā jiào Liú Wénguāng. Zhè shì Bái xiānsheng.
 Liú Bái xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo!
 Bái O, nǐ hǎo!

Language notes

1 How to be courteous

In Chinese, when you don't know somebody very well (or at all) or you wish to show respect (usually for older people, teachers, etc.), you use **nín** instead of **nǐ**. It is, however, used less frequently

than it used to be and it cannot be used in the plural. This means that the plural form of both *nǐ* and *nín* is *nǐmen*.

2 'You' and 'yours'

Nǐ means *you* (sing). If you add the little word *de* to it, it means *your* or *yours*:

<i>nǐde háizi</i>	<i>your child</i>
<i>wǒde xiānsheng</i>	<i>my husband</i>
<i>zhè shì nǐde</i>	<i>this is yours</i>
<i>Lǐ tàitai de háizi</i>	<i>Mrs Li's child</i>
<i>tade háizi</i>	<i>her/his child</i>

In close personal relationships: *nǐ tàitai* (*your wife*), *wǒ māma* (*my mum*), the *de* may be omitted (Dialogue 1, p. 4 where Mrs Green asks *Xiǎo Wáng, Nǐ tàitai hǎo ma?*).

3 How to say 'No' with *Yǒu!*

To say *do not have* in Chinese you put *méi* in front of the verb *yǒu* to *have*.

For present or future actions all other verbs are negated by putting *bù* in front of them (p. 8).

<i>Wǒ méi yǒu háizi.</i>	<i>I have no children.</i>
<i>Tā méi yǒu Zhōngwén míngzi.</i>	<i>She doesn't have a Chinese name.</i>

4 Another way of asking questions

If you put the positive and negative forms of the verb together (in that order) you can make a question:

<i>Nǐ yǒu mei yǒu háizi?</i>	<i>Do you have children?</i>
<i>Nǐ shì bu shì lǎoshī?</i>	<i>Are you a teacher?</i>

This is a popular alternative to the question form with *ma* on p. 8. The negative form of the verb is normally unstressed when it is used to make a question in this way. It is stressed, however, if the question is said slowly or with emphasis.

5 'Yes' and 'No' in replies

Yes and *no* don't exist as such in Chinese. If you are asked a question the answer is either the positive form of the verb (to mean *yes*) or the negative form of the verb (to mean *no*):

<i>Nǐ yǒu mei yǒu háizi?</i>	<i>Do you have children?</i>
<i>You.</i>	<i>Yes, I do.</i>
<i>Mei yǒu.</i>	<i>No, I don't.</i>
<i>Nǐ rènshi tā ma?</i>	<i>Do you know her?</i>
<i>Rènshi.</i>	<i>Yes, I do.</i>
<i>Bu rènshi.</i>	<i>No, I don't.</i>

6 To be or not to be?

Shì, the verb *to be* in English, is used much less in Chinese than in English. This is because adjectives in Chinese can also act as verbs as you saw in Unit 1, p. 7. For example, *hǎo* means *to be good* as well as *good* so there is no need for the verb *to be*.

<i>Zhè shì nǐde háizi ma?</i>	<i>Is this your child?</i>
<i>Bu shì. Zhè shì Lǐ tàitai de háizi.</i>	<i>No, it's Mrs Li's.</i>
<i>Tā shì nǐde nǚ péngyou ma?</i>	<i>Is she your girlfriend?</i>
<i>Bu shì. Tā shì wǒ tàitai.</i>	<i>No, she is my wife.</i>

7 Who and what?

In Chinese, question words such as *shéi* (*who*) and *shénme* (*what*) appear in the sentence in the same position as the word or words which replace them in the answer:

<i>Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi?</i>	<i>What are you called?</i> (lit. You are called what?)
<i>Wǒ jiào Pàn Pan.</i>	<i>I'm called Pàn Pan.</i>
<i>Nā shì shéi?</i>	<i>Who is that (young lady)?</i> (lit. That [young lady] is who?)
<i>Tā shì wǒ (de) péngyou.</i>	<i>She is my friend.</i>

This is different from the word order in English where the question word is at the beginning of the sentence.

8 Follow-up questions

To avoid having to ask a question in full or to repeat the same question you can use the little word *ne* at the end of a phrase to take a short cut!

<i>Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi?</i>	<i>What's your name?</i>
<i>Wǒ jiào Wú Zébì. Nǐ ne?</i>	<i>I'm called/My name is Wu Zebi.</i>
	<i>What about you?</i> (i.e. what's your name?)
<i>Wǒ jiào Bái Bǐdé. Tā ne?</i>	<i>My name's Peter White.</i> <i>What's hers?</i>

i As you saw in Unit 1, the surname or family name comes before your title in Chinese. This means that your given name (first name) comes **after** your surname:

Cháng (family name) **Zhèng** (given name)

Bái (family name) **Bǐdé** (given name)

The use of first names is generally reserved for family members and close friends. Colleagues or people in your peer group are addressed on an informal basis by their surnames prefaced by **lǎo** (*old*) or **xiǎo** (*young*), largely depending on whether the person in question is older or younger than you.

Practice

1 Complete the following exchanges by filling in the blanks in the sentences below:

- a Tā jiào ___ míngzi? Tā ___ Fāng Yuán.
- b Nǐ ___ shuō Zhōngwén ma? Huì. Wǒ huì ___ yidiǎnr.
- c Tāde nán péngyou ___ shéi? Wǒ bú ___ tā.

2 Look at the pictures and answer the following questions in Chinese:



Lǐ Jīnshēng

- a Tāmen shì shéi?
- ← b Tā jiào shénme?
- c Tā xìng Yīng ma? →
- ← d Tā yě xìng Yīng ma?
- e Nǐ rènshi tāmen ma?



Yīng Zipéng

▶ 3 Listen to the recording and answer the following questions about the Chinese woman in the passage. If you don't have the recording, read the passage below and then answer the questions.

- a What's her surname?
- b What's her first name?
- c How much English does she speak?
- d What is her occupation?
- e Does she know you?
- f What does she look like?
- g Does she have a boyfriend?

Wǒde Zhōngwén lǎoshī jiào Wáng Lányīng. Tā hén piàoliang. Tā yǒu nán péngyou. Tāmen bú rènshi nǐ. Tāmen huì shuō yidiǎnr Yīngwén.

4 Who is who? State the names and the occupation of each person pictured below. You can get more practice if you use both of the patterns given in the example:

Tā jiào Yán Lóng. Tā shì xuésheng (*student*).
Zhè/nà shì Yán Lóng. Tā shì xuésheng.

<p>a Zhào Huá</p> <p>jǐngchá</p>	<p>b Liú Guāng</p> <p>sījī</p>	<p>c Guō Jié</p> <p>dàifu</p>
<p>d Lǐ Mínglǐ</p> <p>lǎoshī</p>	<p>e Zhōu Jiābǎo</p> <p>xuésheng</p>	<p>f Wú Zébì</p> <p>chúshī</p>

5 According to the pictures in exercise 4, are the following statements true or false? If it's true, say **duì** meaning *correct*. If it's not true, say **bú duì**, meaning *not correct*. Tick the right box in each case.

Example: Zhào Huá xìng Huá. (bú duì)

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| | duì | bú duì? |
| a Zhào Huá shì lǎoshī. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b Liú Guāng bú shì sījī. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c Nà ge dàifu jiào Wú Zébì. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d Zhōu Jiābǎo xìng Jiābǎo. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| e Lǐ lǎoshī jiào Lǐ Míng. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| f Wú Zébì shì chúshī. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- 6 You have learnt two ways to ask questions. With each set of words use these different question forms to make up two questions. The example will make this clear.

Example: Tā/huì shuō/Fǎwén (*French*)

- Tā huì shuō Fǎwén ma?
- Tā huì bú huì shuō Fǎwén?

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| a Nǐ/huì shuō/Yīngwén | e Wáng Fāng/yǒu/Yīngwén |
| b Nǐmen/shì/lǎoshī | míngzi |
| c Xiǎo Zhèng/zài | f Lín lǎoshī/jiào/Lín Péng |
| d Lǐ xiānsheng/jintiān/lái | |

Quick review

How would you say the following?

- Ask what a person's surname is.
- Say *My name is xxx*.
- Say that you haven't got a Chinese name.
- Say that you don't know her.
- Say *That's OK* when someone apologizes to you.
- Say that your friend is not a teacher.

Lā Pull 拉 ·	Tuī Push · 推
----------------	-----------------

03

nǐ shì nǎ guó rén?

where are you from?

In this unit you will learn

- how to say where you come from and what nationality you are
- how to ask for and give an address
- the numbers 0–10
- how to ask for, and give, a telephone number
- how to fill out a form

Before you start

Talking about where you come from, what nationality you are, where you live and what your telephone number is in Chinese is straightforward with the necessary vocabulary and a few of the basic rules about word order. Chinese numbers are very easy as you will discover in this unit.

It is important to have short-term goals to encourage yourself. In this unit keep practising how to ask other people where they come from, where they live and what their telephone number is. Make sure you can answer these questions yourself! Aim at answering them without thinking.

Let's try

You are at a party where you hardly know anyone.

- How do you introduce yourself and how do you ask somebody his/her name?
- If you find out that one of the guests is married, how do you ask if they have any children?

▶ Key words and phrases

diànhuà	telephone (lit. electric speech)
duì	yes, correct
Dōngchéng (Qū)	Eastern City (District)
duōshao?	what's the number of?
fàndiàn	hotel
fángjiān	room
fēijī	plane
Guǎngdōng	Canton (province)
guó	country
hào	number
hàomǎ	number (often used for telephone, telex, fax numbers and car registration plates)
héping	peace
jǐ hào?	which number?
lù	road, street

Lúndūn	London
míngpiàn	namecard
nǎr?	where?
piào	ticket
qū	district
rén	person
Xīchéng (Qū)	Western City (District)
xǐhuan	to like
yìsi	meaning
zhù	to live
zhù zài	to live in / at a place

Learning tips

- Try pronouncing the names of the countries on pp. 25–26. Repeat them out loud over and over again.
- Every time you stumble over the pronunciation of a word or syllable go back to the **Pronunciation guide** and check it out on pp. xiv–xviii.
- Foreign names, such as the names of countries and cities, can be expressed in Chinese in three main ways:
 - Based on the original sound, such as *Yìdàlì* (*Italy*)
 - Based on the meaning, such as *Niújīn* (*Oxford*) (lit. ox/ cow ford)
 - A mixture of the original sound and its meaning, such as *Xīn* (*new*) *Xīlán* (*New Zealand*)

Dialogues

▶ Dialogue 1

Mr Peter White (Bái Bídé) meets a Chinese person, Lín Jiànmù, at a conference.

- Lín Nín shì nǎ guó rén?
 Bái Wǒ shì Yīngguó-rén. Zhè shì wǒde míngpiàn.
 Lín Xièxie. O, Bái xiānsheng, nín zhù zài Lúndūn?
 Bái Duì. Nín shì Zhōngguó-rén ba?
 Lín Shì, wǒ shì Guǎngdōng-rén.

Dialogue 2

Bái xiānsheng goes to collect his plane ticket at a Chinese travel agency.

- Assistant** Zhè shì nín de fēijī piào.
Bái Xièxie. Wǒ zhù zài shénme fàndiàn?
Assistant Nín zhù zài Héping Fàndiàn.
Bái Héping shì shénme yìsi?
Assistant Héping shì 'peace' de yìsi.
Bái Hěn hǎo. Wǒ xǐhuan héping.

Numbers 0-10

líng	0	sān	3	liù	6	jiǔ	9
yī	1	sì	4	qī	7	shí	10
èr	2	wǔ	5	bā	8		

一 二 三 四 五 六 七 八 九 十

yī èr sān sì wǔ liù qī bā jiǔ shí

- Practise saying 1 to 5: yī èr sān sì wǔ. Then say 6 to 10: liù qī bā jiǔ shí. Then put them altogether: yī èr sān . . . jiǔ shí.
- Now say: yī sān wǔ qī jiǔ. Then say: èr sì liù bā shí.
- Now try this: yī èr sān, sān èr yī, yī èr sān sì wǔ liù qī.

Dialogue 3

Mr White and Mr Lin decide to further their business association.

- Lín** Nǐ zhù zài nǎr?
Bái Wǒ zhù zài Héping Fàndiàn.
Lín Jǐ hào fángjiān?
Bái Wǔ-líng-bā hào fángjiān. Nǐ zhù zài nǎr?
Lín Wǒ zhù zài Píng'ān Lù qī hào.
Bái Píng'ān Lù zài nǎr?
Lín Píng'ān Lù zài Xīchéng Qū.
Bái Héping Fàndiàn yě zài Xīchéng Qū shì bu shì?
Lín Bú zài. Zài Dōngchéng Qū.
Bái Nǐde diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao?
Lín Liù-wǔ-wǔ-èr jiǔ-sān-èr-sì. Nǐde ne?
Bái Wǒde shì liù-liù-qī-sān bā-bā-sān-líng.

Language notes

1 Where are you from?

To give your nationality you say the name of the country and then add *-rén person* after it:

Zhōngguó	<i>China, Chinese</i>
Zhōngguó-rén	<i>Chinese person</i>
Měiguó	<i>America (US)</i>
Měiguó-rén	<i>American</i>

Look at the two maps and the table between them to see exactly how this works.

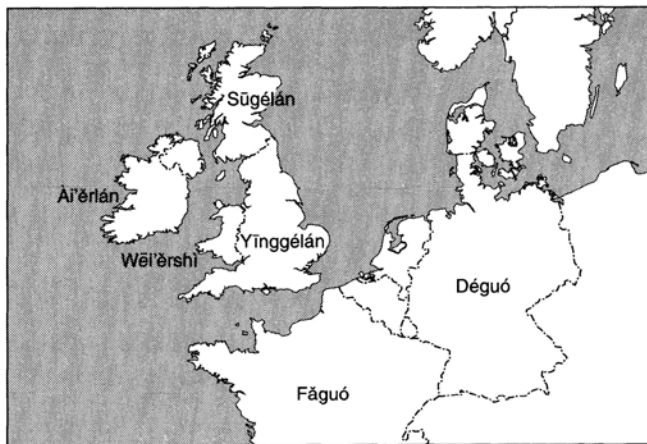


Country	Nationality	Country/Nationality
Ài'ěrlán	Ài'ěrlán-rén	Ireland/Irish
Déguó	Déguó-rén	Germany/German
Fǎguó	Fǎguó-rén	France/French
Měiguó	Měiguó-rén	USA/American
Riběn	Riběn-rén	Japan/Japanese
Sūgélán	Sūgélán-rén	Scotland/Scottish
Yīngguó	Yīngguó-rén	Britain/British
Yuènnán	Yuènnán-rén	Vietnam/Vietnamese
Wēi'ěrshì	Wēi'ěrshì-rén	Wales/Welsh
(Xiānggǎng)	(Xiānggǎng-rén)	(Hong Kong/from HK)
Zhōngguó	Zhōngguó-rén	China/Chinese

àodàlìyà

àodàlìyà-rén

Australia



You do exactly the same thing when you wish to say which province or town you come from:

Wǒ shì Lúndūn-rén.	<i>I'm a Londoner.</i>
Nǐ shì Luómǎ-rén ma?	<i>Are you from Rome?</i>
Tā shì bu shì Běijīng-rén?	<i>Is he from Beijing?</i>
Wǒmen shì Fújiàn-rén.	<i>We're from Fujian province.</i>
Tāmen shì Guǎngdōng-rén.	<i>They're from Canton province.</i>

2 Question tag: *ba*

Ba is placed after a verb or phrase to make a suggestion or to ask for confirmation of a supposition:

Nǐ shì Zhōngguó-rén ba ?	<i>You're Chinese, I take it?</i>
Hǎo ba ?	<i>Is that all right then?</i>

3 Linking word *de*

You have to reverse the word order in Chinese to translate a phrase such as: *the meaning of peace*. The two words **héping** (*peace*) and **yìsi** (*meaning*) are linked by the little word **de**.

héping de yìsi	<i>the meaning of héping</i>
-----------------------	------------------------------

Some people call this the possessive **de** to distinguish it from another **de** you will meet in Unit 8.

Look carefully at the following examples:

Fāndiàn de yìsi shì <i>hotel</i> .	<i>The meaning of fandian is hotel.</i>
Bái xiānsheng de diànhuà hāomǎ	<i>Mr White's telephone number</i>
Mǎ tàitai de háizi	<i>Mrs Ma's child</i>

4 Room 508

Room 508 is said as *508 Room* in Chinese (the reverse of English word order) with the addition of the word **hào** (*number*) after 508. More examples of this are given below:

10 (shí) hào	<i>No. 10</i>
5 (wǔ) hào fángjiān	<i>Room 5</i>

Room numbers up to 100 are generally said as one number. You will meet numbers from ten to 100 in the next unit.

Numbers over 100 are broken down into single digits:

374 (sān-qī-sì) hào fángjiān	<i>Room 374</i>
896 (bā-jiǔ-liù) hào fángjiān	<i>Room 896</i>

5 Question tag: *shì bu shì*?

Making a question by putting **shì bu shì** at the end of a sentence in Chinese conveys the idea of *Am I right?* or *Is it true?*:

Héping Fàndiàn yě zài Xīchéng Qū shì bu shì ?	<i>The Peace Hotel is also in the Western City District, isn't it?</i>
Nǐ shì Yīngguó-rén shì bu shì ?	<i>You're English/British, aren't you?</i>

6 Telephone numbers

Telephone numbers are often made up of seven or eight digits each of which is usually said separately:

551 8274	wǔ-wǔ-yāo bā-èr-qī-sì
8228 9436	bā-èr-èr-bā jiǔ-sì-sān-liù

Yāo is used instead of **yī** when telephone numbers or large numbers for rooms, buses, trains, and so on, are broken down into single digits. This avoids any confusion with **qī** (seven).

Learning tips

- 1 Have imaginary conversations with yourself in Chinese using the material in the dialogues and the structures you have covered.
- 2 Think of somebody and say everything you can about them in Chinese: what their name is, what nationality they are, where they live, what their telephone number is, whether they have children, if you like them, and so on. Then do the same thing with somebody else, and so on, until you can go through the whole routine without hesitation.
- 3 **Don't worry about making mistakes!**

Anybody who has successfully learnt a foreign language knows that the way to make progress is to listen and speak as much as possible. Don't worry if you don't understand a lot of what is said to you in the beginning – just respond to what you do understand.

You will find the following two sentences very useful. Practise them over and over again:

- Qǐng nǐ shuō màn yìdiǎn. *Please speak more slowly.*
(lit. invite you say slow a little)
- Qǐng nǐ zài shuō yí biàn. *Please say it again.*
(lit. invite you again say one time)

This **zài** is not the **zài** which means *to be in/at*; it is the **zài** which means *again* as in **zàijiàn** (*goodbye*) (lit. again see). Words like **zài** (*again*) are called adverbs. They come before the verb in Chinese.

i Chinese people are very direct with their questions. It is not considered rude to ask how old you are, how much you earn, how much your house cost to buy or what the rent is, how much the clothes you are wearing cost, and so on.

Even questions as to why you are so fat or so thin or why you haven't married or why you got divorced (have you got a bad temperament?!) are all considered perfectly legitimate. Things are changing, however, as those people who have increasing contact with Westerners realize that the latter are uncomfortable with such questions.

Practice

- 1 Answer the following questions. If you don't know, say **Wǒ bù zhīdao** (lit. I not know.):
 - a Nǐ shì Měiguó-rén ma?
 - b Nǐ māma (*mum*) shì Fǎguó-rén ma?
 - c Nǐde lǎoshī shì Zhōngguó-rén ba?
 - d Nǐ bàba (*dad*) bú shì Déguó-rén ba?
 - e Dèng Xiǎopíng shì Zhōngguó-rén ma?
 - f Shāshībǐyà (*Shakespeare*) shì bu shì Yīngguó-rén?

- ▶ 2** You are going to hear three people introducing themselves. Listen to the recording twice and take notes while you are doing so. Then fill in as many details about each of the three speakers as you can. Listen again paying particular attention to the bits you have not been able to catch. Listen for a fourth time to check what you have written.

	Speaker 1	Speaker 2	Speaker 3
Surname:
Given name:
Nationality:
Telephone no:
Address:
- city:
- street:
- number:

If you're still not sure of what you've heard, have a look at what the three people say in the **Key to the exercises** on p. 234.

NB: Chinese addresses are written in the reverse order to the way addresses are written in English. In English you give the number of your flat/house first, then the street or road and then the town or city. In Chinese it is city, street, number, as you can see from the chart above.

- 3
 - a Follow the same pattern as the passage you heard in exercise 2 and say something about yourself. Fill in your details on the chart below as you did in exercise 2. You can do this exercise even if you don't have the recording.
 - b Think of one of your friends and fill in his/her details.
 - c If you are doing this with another person, ask him/her questions and fill in his/her details.

Yourself Friend A Friend B

Surname:
 Given name:
 Nationality:
 Telephone no:
 Address:
 - city:
 - street:
 - number:

4 You often see Chinese addresses written in English as in the following examples. How would these addresses be said (or written) in Chinese?

a *Mingli Li*
(Lecturer)
2, Chaoyang Lu
BEIJING

b *Mr. Hua Zhao,*
Room 384, Dongfang
Hotel, 9 Longhai Lu,
Suzhou

c *Miss Jiabao Zhao,*
5, Heping Lu,
Xicheng Qu
Nanjing

5 Match the words in the left-hand column with the ones on the right to make words you've already seen. (We've done one for you.)

a fēijī	i Fàndiàn
b Lúndūn	ii jiàn
c Hépíng	iii piào
d èr-líng-wǔ	iv Qū
e míngtiān	v fángjiān
f Dōngchéng	vi hàomǎ
g diànhuà	vii rén

▶ Quick review

- You meet someone you don't know. How do you ask your friend who he is?
- How do you ask someone where he/she lives?
- Tell someone that you don't live in London.
- Ask someone to give you his/her telephone number.
- Ask what the meaning of *diànhuà* is.
- Say to the Chinese air hostess that this is your (plane) ticket.

You'll find the answers in the **Key to the exercises**. How have you done? If most of them are correct, you will be ready to go on to Unit 4. Congratulations! Before you do so, spend some time revising Units 1, 2 and 3. Regular revision will help to consolidate what you have learnt and give you more confidence.

Before you start

You'll find that speaking about yourself and your family in Chinese is very easy. Remember how to say *I have* or *I don't have* (wǒ yǒu, wǒ méi yǒu)? Using this and the basic vocabulary you will learn in this unit, you have all you need!

You will also be able to count up to 100 by the end of this unit. Having mastered one to ten in Unit 3 you will be surprised how easy it is. 11 is 10 + 1, 12 is 10 + 2, 20 is 2 × 10, 30 is 3 × 10, all the way up to 99 which is 9 × 10 + 9. There is a special word *bǎi* for *hundred* so 100 is *yībǎi* (*one hundred* – you have to use *yi* *one*).

Let's try

You have just been introduced to a Chinese business associate who is on a week's visit to London.

- Ask her which hotel she is staying in and what the number of her room is.
- What do you say when you give her your card?

Key words and phrases

bú kèqi	you are welcome (lit. not guest air)
dà	big
... duō dà?	How old ... ?
... duō dà niánjì?	How old ... ? (respectful) (lit. how old year record)
gè	(measure word)
hé	and
jié hūn	marry
... jié hūn le ma?	... married?
... jī suì?	How old ... ? (for children)
jīnnián	this year
le	grammatical marker
liǎng	two (of anything)
... suì	... years old; age
xiàng	(to look) like
bú xiàng	not to look (like) it
xiǎo	small
yí ge ... yí ge	one ... , the other
zhēnde	really

04

nǚ yǒu xiōngdì jiěmèi ma?

do you have brothers
and sisters?

In this unit you will learn

- how to talk about yourself and your family
- how to ask other people about their family
- how to ask someone if they are married and/or have children
- how to say how old you are
- how to ask how old somebody is
- how to count up to 100

Family members

bàba	dad, father
māma	mum, mother
érzi	son
nǚ'ér	daughter
gēge	elder brother
jiějie	elder sister
didi	younger brother
mèimei	younger sister
xiōngdì	brothers
jiěmèi	sisters
dà didi	the older one of the younger brothers
xiǎo didi	younger one of the younger brothers

Numbers 11–100

shíyī	11	shíliù	16	sānshí	30	bāshí	80
shí'èr	12	shíqī	17	sìshí	40	jiǔshí	90
shísān	13	shíbā	18	wǔshí	50	yībǎi	100
shísì	14	shíjiǔ	19	liùshí	60		
shíwǔ	15	èrshí	20	qīshí	70		

Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Dīng Fèng is carrying out a family planning survey and Liú Fúguì (from the Miao national minority) has agreed to answer a few questions:

- Dīng** Nín jiào shénme míngzi?
Liú Wǒ jiào Liú Fúguì.
Dīng Liú xiānsheng jié hūn le ma?
Liú Jié hūn le.
Dīng Yǒu mei yǒu háizi?

- Liú** Yǒu liǎng ge, yí ge érzi, yí ge nǚ'ér.
Dīng Tāmen jǐ suì?
Liú Èrzi liǎng suì, nǚ'ér wǔ suì.

Learning tips

Practise saying 11 to 15: *shíyī, shí'èr, shísān, shísì, shíwǔ*. Then say 16 to 20 *shíliù, shíqī, shíbā, shíjiǔ, èrshí*. Then put them together: *shíyī, shí'èr, shísān, . . . èrshí*. Do the same for 21 to 25, 26 to 30, and so on.

Tones on yī

Yī (*one*) is a 1st tone when it is part of a number, such as *yī (one), shíyī (eleven), èrshíyī (twenty-one)*. When it occurs before a measure word it is normally a 4th tone, for example *yì tiān (one day), yì běn shū (one book)*, but it turns into a 2nd tone before another 4th tone, for example *yí suì (one year old)*. In *yí ge háizi*, *gè* is said without a tone, although it is actually 4th, but it still carries enough weight to change *yí* into a 2nd tone.

Suì (*year of age*), tiān (*day*) and nián (*year*), all act as measure words and nouns combined (refer to p. 37 for an explanation of what a measure word is). Note that *yībǎi* is *one hundred*.

Dialogue 2

Dīng Fèng asks Liú Fúguì some more questions. By reading/listening to the dialogue can you find out whether Liú Fúguì has any brothers or sisters? How old are they?

- Dīng** Nín yǒu xiōngdì jiěmèi ma?
Liú Yǒu liǎng ge didi, yí ge mèimei. Méi yǒu gēge hé jiějie.
Dīng Nín didi, mèimei duō dà?
Liú Dà didi èrshíliù, xiǎo didi èrshísì.
Dīng Mèimei ne?
Liú Mèimei èrshíbā.
Dīng Hěn hǎo, xièxie nín.
Liú Bú kèqi.
Dīng Zàijiàn.
Liú Zàijiàn.

Dialogue 3

Wú and Lù are looking at a photo of Lù's family.



- Wú Nǐ bàba, māma duō dà niánjì?
 Lù Bàba wúshísān, māma sishíjiǔ.
 Wú Bú xiàng, bú xiàng. Zhè shì nǐ mèimei ba. Tā zhēn piàoliang.
 Lù Tā jīnnián èrshí'èr.
 Wú Zhēnde? Tā jié hūn le ma?
 Lù Méi yǒu. Kěshì yǒu nán péngyou le.
 Wú O.

Language notes

1 Sentences ending in . . . le

If you put the little word **le** at the end of a sentence, it shows that something has happened or has already taken place:

- Wǒ jié hūn le. *I'm married.*
 Wǒ qǐng tā le. *I invited him.*
 Wǒ wèn tā le. *I asked her.*

If you want to make a question, simply add **ma** or **méi you** to the end of a sentence. **Yǒu** is unstressed.

- Nǐ jié hūn le **ma**? *Are you married?*
 Nǐ jié hūn le **méi you**? *Are you married?*

If you want to say something has not happened, you use **méi yǒu** (*not have*) plus the verb:

- Wǒ méi yǒu jié hūn. *I'm not married.*
 Wǒ méi qǐng tā. *I didn't invite him.*
 Wǒ méi wèn tā. *I haven't asked her.*

The **yǒu** can be omitted.

2 One or two

In Chinese something called a measure word (MW) or classifier has to be used between a number and the noun following it.

In English you can say:

- two children
 three daughters
 four books

But in Chinese you have to put the measure word/classifier in between the number and the item:

- two measure word/classifier children
 three measure word/classifier daughters
 four measure word/classifier books

- | | |
|----------------|------------------------|
| liǎng ge háizi | <i>two children</i> |
| sān ge nǚ'ér | <i>three daughters</i> |
| sì běn shū | <i>four books</i> |

Different measure words are used with different categories of nouns. For example, **běn** is used for books and magazines whereas **zhāng** is used for rectangular or square, flat objects such as tables, beds, maps and so on, but it is not a true measure as to length or anything else:

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| wǔ běn zázhì | <i>five magazines</i> |
| liù zhāng zhuōzi | <i>six tables</i> |
| qī zhāng chuáng | <i>seven beds</i> |

Gè is by far the most common measure word. It is used with a whole range of nouns which do not have their own specific measure word. When in doubt use **gè**! The noun accompanying the number and measure word is often omitted when it is clear from the context what this is:

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| Nǐ yǒu mei yǒu háizi? | <i>Have you any children?</i> |
| Yǒu liǎng ge (háizi), yí ge érzi, yí ge nǚ'ér. | <i>Two, a son and a daughter.</i> |

3 Two for tea!

Liǎng meaning *two of a kind* is used with measure words instead of **èr** (*two*), so *two children* is **liǎng ge háizi** and not **èr ge háizi**.

7 Brothers and sisters

The collective term for *sisters* (without saying whether they are older or younger) is **jiěmèi**, combining half of **jiějie** with half of **mèimei**. Similarly there is a collective term **xiōngdì** for *brothers*, although in this case a more literary term for elder brother is used:

Wǒ méi yǒu xiōngdì jiěmèi. *I don't have any brothers or sisters.*

8 Polite talk

In Unit 1, when Mrs Green thanked Xiǎo Wáng he responded by saying:

Bú yòng xiè (*lit.* not need/use thank) *Don't mention it / Not at all.*

He could also have said **Bú xiè**.

An equally appropriate response to thanks would be:

Bú kèqi. (*lit.* not guest air/polite) *It's nothing, not at all.*

Chinese people tend to say 'thank you' rather less than in the West so they feel obliged to respond when somebody says 'thank you' to them.

Learning tips

Create opportunities to speak Chinese as much as you can.

- 1 Try to find other learners of Chinese to practise with. Find out about classes in your local area or where you work. (Your public library will usually be able to help you.)
- 2 If you have the recording, listen to it as much as you can – in the car, on public transport.
- 3 Advertise a language exchange in your local newspaper – offer to give English conversation lessons in return for Chinese ones. Make sure that you say you are learning Modern Standard Chinese (or Mandarin as it is called by many overseas Chinese) as many Chinese people in the UK are Cantonese speakers who have come from Hong Kong.

4 How old are you?

When asking small children how old they are, you use **jǐ** (*how many*) when you are expecting a small number (generally less than 10) as an answer plus the word for years (of age) **sui**:

Háizi jǐ sui? *How old is/are the children?*
Tā wǔ sui. *He/she's five years old.*

Note that no verb is necessary in such sentences. When asking teenagers or young adults how old they are you use **duō** (*how*) together with **dà** (*old/big*):

Nǐ duō dà? *How old are you (of teenager/young adult)?*
Wǒ èrshí sui. *I'm twenty.*

Again, note that no verb is necessary.

When asking older(!) adults how old they are, the phrase **duō dà niánjì** (*lit.* how big year record) is used:

Nǐ bàba, māma duō dà niánjì? *How old are your Mum and Dad?*

Bàba wǔshísān, māma sìshíjiǔ. *Dad is 53, Mum is 49.*

Bàba (*dad*) comes before **māma** (*mum*) in Chinese word order, as does **fùqin** (*father*) before **mǔqin** (*mother*)!

5 Punctuation – when is a comma not a comma?

When it's a pause-mark! In Chinese, if two or more items are listed together, a pause-mark, is used between the items and not a comma. A comma is reserved for longer pauses:

Wǒ yǒu liǎng ge dìdi, *I have two younger brothers*
yí ge mèimei. *and a younger sister.*
Nǐ bàba, māma duō dà niánjì? *How old are your Mum and Dad?*

6 Apostrophe for clarity

To prevent you saying **nǚ'èr** instead of making a pause between the two syllables **nǚ** and **èr**, the Chinese insert an apostrophe (') between the two, so it is:

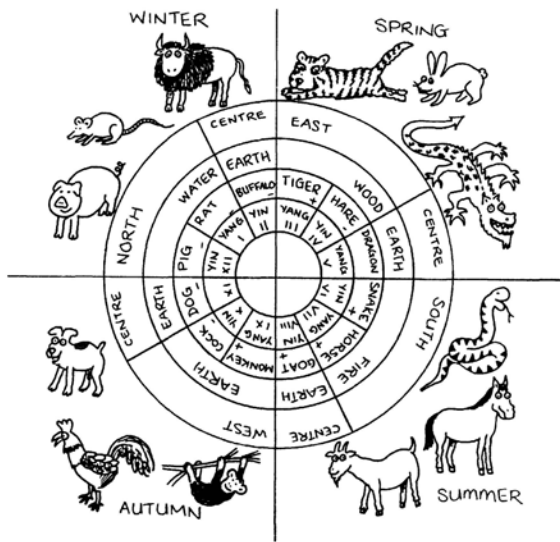
nǚ'èr
shí'èr (*not shìèr*)
èrshí'èr (*not èrshìèr*)

i The Chinese zodiac

The Chinese zodiac works in a 12-year cycle rather than in months as the Western one does. You probably know whether you are a Capricorn or a Leo or whatever but do you know which **Animal Year** you belong to? The order is as follows:

Rat (<i>shǔ</i>)	1996	1984	1972	1960	1948	1936
Ox (<i>niú</i>)	1997	1985	1973	1961	1949	1937
Tiger (<i>hǔ</i>)	1998	1986	1974	1962	1950	1938
Rabbit (<i>tù</i>)	1999	1987	1975	1963	1951	1939
Dragon (<i>lóng</i>)	2000	1988	1976	1964	1952	1940
Snake (<i>shé</i>)	2001	1989	1977	1965	1953	1941
Horse (<i>mǎ</i>)	2002	1990	1978	1966	1954	1942
Sheep (<i>yáng</i>)	2003	1991	1979	1967	1955	1943
Monkey (<i>hóu</i>)	2004	1992	1980	1968	1956	1944
Cockerel (<i>jī</i>)	2005	1993	1981	1969	1957	1945
Dog (<i>gǒu</i>)	2006	1994	1982	1970	1958	1946
Pig (<i>zhū</i>)	2007	1995	1983	1971	1959	1947

Can you work out which animal you are?! For instance if you were born in 1976 you are a dragon, if you were born in 1971 you are a pig (but make sure you take the Lunar New Year into account on p. 217). Each Animal Year is said to possess certain characteristics. It might be fun to get hold of a book on Chinese astrology and read up on your particular animal. Such books are now relatively easy to obtain at any reputable bookshop.



Practice

1 Choose the right number:

- Which is the smallest number?
wǔshíbā
èrshíjiǔ
sìshíliù
- Which is the odd one out?
qīshíyī
bāshíbā
jiǔshíjiǔ
- Which number is the largest?
sānshí'èr
èrshísān
sānshíyī

2 Now try the following calculations. Find the number to replace the question marks and say it out loud in Chinese.

- $7 \times 3 = ?$
- $? - 40 = 30$
- $10 + ? = 76$
- $98 \div 2 = ?$

You can also say equations in Chinese:

- | | | | | | |
|---|------|-------|---|-------|--------|
| + | jiā | plus | × | chéng | times |
| - | jiǎn | minus | ÷ | chú | divide |

What would you say to fill these blanks?

- Shíwǔ chéng èr shì ____.
- ____ jiǎn wúshí shì shí.
- Èrshí jiā ____ shì sānshíwǔ.
- Jiǔshíjiǔ chú sān shì ____.

▶ 3 Listen to the recording (or read the passage below if you haven't got the recording) and say or write down the names and ages of Dīng's children. If you're still not sure of what you've heard, check it out in the **Key to the exercises** on p. 235.

Dīng Fèng jié hūn le. Tā yǒu liǎng ge háizi, yí ge èrzi, yí ge nǚ'ér. Èrzi jiào Dīng Níng, jīnnián shí'èr suì. Nǚ'ér jiào Dīng Yīng, jīnnián shísi suì.

4 You are an only child and you are neither married nor have any children. Your father is a doctor (**yīsheng**), and your mother a teacher. How would you answer the following questions in Chinese?

- a Nǐ yǒu gēge ma?
b Nǐ jié hūn le ma?
c Nǐ bàba shì lǎoshī ma?
d Nǐ yǒu jǐ ge háizi?
e Nǐ dìdi jiào shénme?

5 Match the questions in the left-hand column with the answers on the right.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|
| a Nǐ jié hūn le ma? | i Wáng Yìfū. |
| b Tā jǐ suì? | ii Tā méi yǒu nǚ'ér. |
| c Wáng lǎoshī jiào shénme míngzi? | iii Tā wǔ suì. |
| d Nǐmen yǒu háizi ma? | iv Wǒ jié hūn le. |
| e Lǐ tàitai yǒu nǚ'ér ma? | v Wǒmen méi háizi. |

▶ 6 The following is what Hēnglǐ (Henry) said about himself, his brother and his sister. Imagine you are Hēnglǐ's sister and talk about yourself and your brothers.

Wǒ jiào Hēnglǐ, jīnnián èrshí suì. Wǒ méi yǒu gēge, méi yǒu jiějie. Wǒ yǒu yí ge dìdi, yí ge mèimei. Wǒ dìdi jiào Bǐdé (*Peter*). Tā shíwǔ suì. Wǒ mèimei jiào Mǎlì (*Mary*). Tā jīnnián shíqī suì. Wǒmen dōu shì xuésheng (*student*).

▶ Quick review

You see a little Chinese girl and say the following to her:

- a Hello!
b What's your name?
c How old are you?
d Have you got any brothers and sisters?
e Thank you.
f Goodbye!

05

Jǐ diǎn le? what time is it now?

In this unit you will learn

- the days of the week
- the months of the year
- how to tell the time
- how to ask what time it is
- some useful expressions of time
- how to give the date
- how to make arrangements

Before you start

In China, or any Chinese-speaking environment, you'd need to be able to find out when shops and banks are open. You also need to be able to recognize the Chinese characters for opening times **Yíngyè shíjiān** 营业时间 and the numbers 1 to 12 (plus the characters for *o'clock*) and the days of the week. You will be able to do all this by the end of the unit.

Let's try

- 1 You are at a reception where you meet a Chinese acquaintance of a friend of yours. He does not speak any English so you take the opportunity to try out your Chinese. You know he is called Chén. Think of at least ten questions you can ask him in Chinese. Go back to Units 1 to 4 if you need to review vocabulary.
- 2 Revise the following numbers and say them out loud. 64 – 29 – 57 – 38 – 12 – 95 – 40 – 2 – 73 – 10. Check your answers with the numbers on p. 34.

Key words and phrases

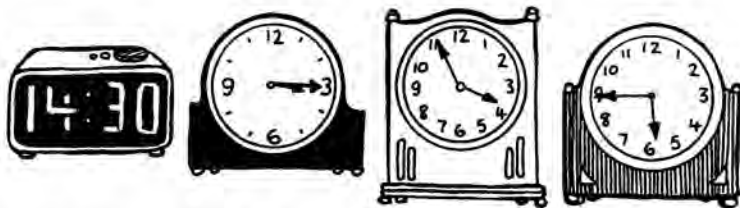
bàn	half
bāng	help
chà	lacking, short of
Chūnjié	the Spring Festival
dào	to
dì	(for ordinal numbers)
dōu	all, both
guān (mén)	close (door)
hái	still
hái yǒu	still have, there are still
huì	meeting
huǒchē	train
jǐ?	how many? (usually less than ten)
jiù shì	to be precisely; to be nothing else but
kāi huì	to have a meeting
kāi (mén)	open (door)
kāishǐ	start

kàn(yi)kàn	to have a look
kěxī	it's a pity
míngnián	next year
qù	go
shàng	on
shēngri	birthday
yǐjīng	already
yǐwéi	thought, assume
zhàntái	platform
zhīdào	know
zhù (ni)	wish (you)
Zhù nǐ yí lù shùn fēng!	Have a safe journey!

Time expressions

diǎn	o'clock
fēn(zhōng)	minute
jǐ diǎn?	what time . . . ?
(Xiànzài) jǐ diǎn le?	What time is it now?
Jǐ yuè jǐ hào?	What's the date? (lit. how many month, how many numbers?)
shàngwǔ	morning
shíjiān	time
wǎnshàng	evening
xiànzài	now
xiàwǔ	afternoon
xīngqī	week
Xīngqī jǐ?	What day is it?
yíkè	a quarter (time)
yuè	month
zǎoshàng	morning
zhōngwǔ	noon
zhōumò	weekend

一月 yīyuè January	二月 èryuè February	三月 sānyuè March	四月 sìyuè April
五月 wǔyuè May	六月 liùyuè June	七月 qīyuè July	八月 bāyuè August
九月 jiǔyuè September	十月 shíyuè October	十一月 shíyīyuè November	十二月 shí'èryuè December



Liǎng diǎn bàn

Sān diǎn yí kè

Chà wǔ fēn sì diǎn

Chà yí kè liù diǎn
Wǔ diǎn sān kè

Learning tips

- ▶1 Months of the year are very easy to say in Chinese. You already know the numbers 1 to 12. All you then need is the word for *yuè* 月 (*moon*). January is *yī-yuè*, February is *èr-yuè* and so on. Be careful not to confuse *yí ge yuè* *one month* with *yīyuè* *January*, *liǎng ge yuè* *two months* with *èryuè* *February*.

yīyuè	January	qīyuè	July
èryuè	February	bāyuè	August
sānyuè	March	jiǔyuè	September
sìyuè	April	shíyuè	October
wǔyuè	May	shíyīyuè	November
liùyuè	June	shíèryuè	December

- ▶2 Days of the week are also easy to say in Chinese. They all start with *xīngqī* 星期 (*week*) (*lit.* star period) and then you use the numbers 1 to 6 for Monday to Saturday. Sunday is special! You add the word *rì* 日 (*sun*) or *tiān* 天 (*day*) to *xīngqī* to make it into Sunday.

xīngqīyī	Monday	xīngqīwǔ	Friday
xīngqī'èr	Tuesday	xīngqīliù	Saturday
xīngqīsān	Wednesday	xīngqītiān	Sunday
xīngqīsì	Thursday	xīngqīrì	

- 3 Repeat the days of the week and the months of the year several times out loud until you have mastered them or listen to them on the recording and say them after the speaker.

Dialogues

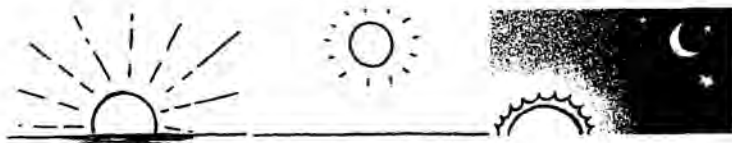
▶ Dialogue 1

A customer is ringing a shop to find out the opening hours.



- Customer** Qǐng wèn, nǐmen jī diǎn kāi mén?
Assistant Shàngwǔ bā diǎn dào xiàwǔ wǔ diǎn bàn.
Customer Zhōngwǔ guān mén ma?
Assistant Bù guān.
Customer Zhōumò kāi bu kāi?
Assistant Xīngqīliù kāi, xīngqītiān bù kāi.

早上 上午 中午 下午 晚上



<----- 8am ----- 12pm ----- 6pm ----->
 zǎoshang shàngwǔ zhōngwǔ xiàwǔ wǎnshang

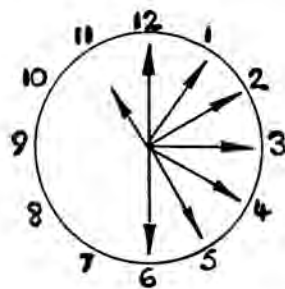
Ann Zhēn kèxī. Wǒde shēngri shì èryuè shíyī hào.
Friend Méi guānxi. Yīngguó shíyī hào de wǎnshang jiù shì Zhōngguó shí'èr hào de zǎoshang.

Language notes

1 Telling the time

Xiànzài jǐ diǎn (zhōng) le? *What time is it/now? (lit. now how many points clock)*

To reply to this question you use the 12-hour clock in Chinese. **Zhōng** is normally left out except when asking the time or (as in English) on the hour where it is optional. The use of **xiànzài** is also optional.



(Xiànzài) shíyī diǎn (zhōng) le.
11.00

(Xiànzài) shíyī diǎn (líng) wǔ fēn le. **Líng** (zero) is optional. 11.05

Shíyī diǎn shí fēn. 11.10

Shíyī diǎn shíwǔ fēn or shíyī diǎn yí kè (one quarter). 11.15

Shíyī diǎn èrshí fēn. 11.20

Shíyī diǎn èrshíwǔ fēn. 11.25

Shíyī diǎn sānshí or shíyī diǎn bàn (half). 11.30



Yì diǎn sānshíwǔ or chà (lack) èrshíwǔ (fēn) liǎng diǎn. 1.35

Yì diǎn sìshí or chà èrshí (fēn) liǎng diǎn. 1.40

Yì diǎn sìshíwǔ fēn or yì diǎn sān kè (three quarters) or

chà yí kè liǎng diǎn or liǎng diǎn chà yí kè. 1.45

Yì diǎn wǔshí fēn or chà shí fēn liǎng diǎn. 1.50

Yì diǎn wǔshíwǔ fēn or chà wǔ fēn liǎng diǎn. 1.55

Formal announcements of time are given using the 24-hour clock.

Dialogue 2

Two colleagues, Xiǎo Xú and Lǎo Wàn, are in the office when Xiǎo Xú suddenly remembers something.

Xiǎo Xú Xiànzài jǐ diǎn le?
Lǎo Wàn Liǎng diǎn yí kè le.
Xiǎo Xú O, hui yǐjīng kāishǐ le.
Lǎo Wàn Shénme hui? Nǐ bú shì míngtiān kāi huì ma?
Xiǎo Xú Jīntiān xīngqī jǐ?
Lǎo Wàn Xīngqīsān.
Xiǎo Xú O, wǒ hái yíwéi shì xīngqīsì ne.

i In Chinese-speaking environments, other than in China, you may well hear the word **lǐbài** 礼拜 used instead of **xīngqī**. So Monday would be **lǐbàiyī** instead of **xīngqīyī**, Tuesday would be **lǐbài'èr** and so on. The word **lǐbài** has certain Christian connotations as 'to go to church' is **zuò (dào) lǐbài**.

Dialogue 3

Departure
LIVERPOOL
Platform 6
15.15
16.20

At a train station, Jane sees a Chinese person looking at the departure and arrivals board, obviously very perplexed. She decides to help him if she can.

Jane Nǐ qù nǎr?
Chinese Wǒ qù Liwùpǔ.
Jane Jǐ diǎn de huǒchē?
Chinese Wǒ bù zhīdao. Piào shang méi yǒu shíjiān.
Jane Wǒ bāng nǐ kànkān. (looks at the notice board)
 Ah, sān diǎn yí kè, zài dì-liù zhàntái.
Chinese Xiànzài sān diǎn chà wǔ fēn, hái yǒu èrshí fēnzhōng.
Jane Zhù nǐ yìlù shùnfēng.
Chinese Xièxie nǐ. Zàijàn.

Dialogue 4

Ann wants to find out whether her birthday happens to fall on Chinese New Year. Read the dialogue and see if you can find the answer.

Ann Míngnián Chūnjié shì jǐ yuè jǐ hào?
Friend Èryuè shí'èr hào.

2 Dates

Months of the year, days of the week and parts of the day are easy (pp. 46–47) but you still need to learn dates. In Chinese the order for a date is the reverse of that used in English:

It is year, month, day, time of day (morning, afternoon, etc.), hour.

In Chinese you move from the general to the particular.

The year is read as single numbers followed by the word **nián** 年 (*year*):

yī-jiǔ-yī-sì nián	1914
yī-jiǔ-sì-wǔ nián	1945

You ask what the date is by saying: **Jǐ yuè jǐ hào?** (*lit.* how many months how many numbers).

Jīntiān jǐ yuè jǐ hào?	<i>What's the date today?</i>
Jīntiān bāyuè shí hào.	<i>Today's August 10th.</i>
Xīngqīsān jǐ hào?	<i>What's the date on Wednesday?</i>
(Xīngqīsān) èrshíbā hào.	<i>It's 28th (on Wednesday).</i>

You can now work out how to say 12 noon on Tuesday, July 23rd 1989:

Yī-jiǔ-bā-jiǔ nián qīyuè èrshísān hào xīngqī'èr zhōngwǔ shí'èr diǎn.

Note that when you're telling the time and giving dates no verb is necessary. You have already met this in Unit 3 when dealing with ages.

3 Another type of *le*

You will have noticed the little word **le** appearing after **Xiànzài jǐ diǎn?** and **Liǎng diǎn yí kè** in **Dialogue 2**. It is used to indicate that a new state of affairs or situation has appeared. It is used at the end of such sentences as:

Nǐmen yǐjīng hěn dà le.	<i>You're already pretty grown up (whereas previously you weren't).</i>
Tā xiànzài (hěn) piàoliang le.	<i>He's very good looking now (whereas previously he wasn't!).</i>

The Chinese stretch this idea of a change of state to its limits by often using it with questions and answers about age and time:

Háizi jǐ suì le?

How old is the child? (lit. child how many years become)

Xiànzài jǐ diǎn le?

What time is it? (lit. now how many o'clock become)

4 Linking word *de*

This is the same **de** you looked at in Unit 3, p. 26. The main idea – what you are talking about – comes after the **de**, and what describes this main idea or tells you more about it, comes before the **de**:

Jǐ diǎn de huōchē?	<i>The train at what time?</i>
Xīngqītiān kāi de shāngdiàn	<i>Shops which open on Sundays</i>
Zài Lúndūn kāi de huì	<i>The meeting held in London</i>

5 Ticket on – on the ticket

Piào shàng (*lit.* ticket on) *on the ticket*. Again the reverse of the English word order. Do the Chinese do everything back to front, you may be tempted to ask? No wonder they used to write from top to bottom and from right to left (and still do in Taiwan and Hong Kong)! Thus in Chinese you say:

shāngdiàn lǐ	<i>inside the shop</i>
lù shàng	<i>on the road / on the way</i>
huǒchē xià	<i>underneath the train</i>

Words such as **lǐ**, **shàng** and **xià** are normally unstressed when used in this way.

6 Repeating the verb: *kànkàn!*

Repeating the verb has the effect of softening the suggestion, question or statement. Thus the repeated verb is often unstressed. It conveys the idea of *having a little go* at doing the action of the verb in both the sense of a trial and in not making a big fuss about doing something. Verbs of one syllable often have **yi** inserted in the middle when they are repeated.

Kànyikàn.	<i>Have a little look.</i>
Shuōyishuō.	<i>Try saying.</i>

Verbs of two syllables cannot have **yi** inserted in this way; so you cannot say **rènshiyìrènshi** or **kāishiyìkāishǐ**.

7 First or second

To make the numbers one, two, and so on into *the first, the second*, and so on, you only have to put the word *dì* in front of the number. *Èr* does not change into *liǎng* in such cases as there are not two seconds! An expression which used to be very common in China when any form of competition was involved is:

Yǒuyì dì-yī, bǐsài dì-èr. *Friendship first, competition second.*

Learning tips

Have fun while you're learning!

1 What have you learnt about the Chinese language so far? How is it different from any other language you've learnt? Take some time to reflect on this and jot down your thoughts. See if your ideas change as you learn more.

▶ 2 Tongue-twisters are fun in any language. Try the following. Repeat them until you can say them off by heart:

Sì shì sì. 4 is 4.
Shí shì shí. 10 is 10.
Sì bú shì shí. 4 is not 10.
Shí yě bú shì sì. 10 is not 4 either.

Shísì bú shì sìshí. 14 is not 40.
Sìshí yě bú shì shísì. 40 is not 14 either.

The last one is the hardest of all:

Sìshísì ge shí shīzi 44 stone lions

Practice

▶ 1 Can you say the dates of the following festivals (jié) in Chinese?

- New Year's Day (Xīnnián)
- Christmas Day (Shèngdàn jié)
- International Women's Day (Guójì Fùnǚ jié)
- National Day of China (Zhōngguó de Guóqìng jié)
- National Day of your country (X X Guóqìng jié)

2 Give the birthdays of five people using the following structures:

Sòng lǎoshī de shēngri shì siyuè shísi hào.
Siyuè shísi hào shì Sòng lǎoshī de shēngri.

You can use these structures to talk about dates when you have learned more words such as those in Exercise 1.

▶ 3 You will hear some dates and times. Repeat them and write them down. If you haven't got the recording, read the dates and times below and write them down in English.

- jiǔyuè jiǔ hào
- xīngqītiān shàngwǔ
- shíyīyuè èrshíbā hào xīngqīsi
- xīngqīliù shàngwǔ shí diǎn sìshíwǔ
- qīyuè liù hào xīngqīwǔ xiàwǔ sān diǎn bàn
- shí'èryuè sānshíyī hào xīngqīyī shàngwǔ shíyī diǎn

4 Based on the assumption that the time is now 5.05 in the afternoon (wǔ diǎn líng wǔ fēn), answer the following questions in Chinese:

- What will the time be in ten minutes?
- What time was it ten minutes ago?
- How long is it before it is 5.45?
- What time is it in 12 hours' time?
- The train is leaving in two minutes. What time is the train scheduled to leave?

5 Answer the following questions in Chinese based on the day of the week it is when you are doing this exercise.

- What day is it tomorrow?
- And yesterday?
- Five days from today?
- How many days is it before next Tuesday?

6 We don't know the answers to the following questions, but you do:

- Which months are Spring in the part of the world you are living in?
- When is Summer (i.e. what months)? Autumn? Winter?
- How many months is it before your next birthday?
- How many months is it before the New Year? (Hái yǒu X ge yuè.)

Quick review

Answer the following questions in Chinese according to the information on the boards.

- What's the date today?
- What day is it today?
- What's the time now?
- When does the train from Oxford (Niújīn) arrive? At which platform?
- When does the train to Cambridge (Jiànqiáo) leave? From which platform?

Thursday March 30th
16.27

Departure
CAMBRIDGE
Platform 1

16.50

Thursday March 30th
16.27

Arrival
OXFORD
Platform 3

16.45

06

nǚ jīntiān xiǎng
zuò shénme?
what do you want to do today?

In this unit you will learn

- how to say what you want to do
- how to understand and ask for advice
- how to express similarities
- how to compare and contrast

Before you start

Word order is very important in Chinese so there's plenty of help with some of the basic rules in this unit. You'll also learn different ways of making comparisons.

Let's try

- It is often very difficult to get train tickets in China. You are in Běijīng and want to go to Tiānjīn in a couple of days' time. A Chinese friend offers to get your ticket for you as he knows you are very busy. Tell him you want a train ticket for the 9.30am train on Thursday.
- Say the following dates in Chinese:
 - 6 January 1997
 - 21 March 2000 (líng = zero)
 - 15 August 1943
- When is your birthday?
- When were your parents born?

Key words and phrases

Běihǎi Gōngyuán	Beihai Park
bǐ	compared to
chē	vehicle (bus, bike, car)
dīng (piào)	to book (a ticket)
dōngxi	thing, object
fúwùyuán	assistant, housestaff (lit. service person)
gěi	for; to give
gēn	and
háishi	or (used in question forms)
huàn qián	to change money
kàn	to watch, to look at
mǎi	to buy
nàme	in that case, then
nán	difficult
qián	money
ránhòu	afterwards
róngyì	easy
tīng	to listen to
wèntí	question, problem

méi wèntí	no problem
xiān	first
xiǎng	would like to; to think
Xīfāng	the West, Western
xiūxi	to rest, rest
yào	to want, to need, will
yínháng	bank
yíyàng	same
yǒu yisi	interesting (lit. have meaning) (indicating continuing action)
zài	

Leisure activities

dǎ tàijiquán	to do Tai Chi
diànyǐng	film, movie
jīngjù	Peking opera
yīnyuè	music
yīnyuèhuì	concert
tīng yīnyuèhuì	to attend a concert
zájì	acrobatics
zuò	to do
zuò qìgōng	to do qigong

Questions and phrases

shénme shíhou?	When?
Zǎoshang hǎo!	Good morning!
Zhōngguó Yínháng	Bank of China
zuò chē	to take the bus (lit. sit vehicle)
A bǐ B nán / róngyì	A is more difficult / easier than B
A gēn B (bù) yíyàng	A is the same as (different from) B
Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?	What do you want to do?
Tā zài zuò shénme?	What's he / she doing?
Tài hǎo le!	Excellent!

Learning tips

- Go back to the **Pronunciation guide** and read the notes there. The best way of learning this selection of sounds is in pairs, as follows:

b and p	zh and ch
d and t	j and q
z and c	g and k

- 2 Take a sheet of A4 paper and hold it vertically in front of you. Say **b** . . . If you are saying it correctly the sheet will not move. Then say **p** and the top of the sheet should be blown away from you. The same should happen with **d** and **t**, i.e. the sheet should not move when you say **d** but it should move with **t**! Repeat this with each remaining pair. The sheet should not move with **z**, **zh**, **j** and **g** but it should move with **c**, **ch**, **q** and **k**.

Dialogues

▶ Dialogue 1

Frank is attending a conference in China. Today he is free. His Chinese host, Xiǎo Wú, is asking him about his plans. Listen to or read the dialogue and note down his plans:

Frank's plans

Shàngwǔ:
Xiàwǔ:
Wǎnshang:

- Xiǎo Wú** Jīntiān xiūxi. Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?
Frank Wǒ xiǎng qù mǎi dōngxì. Kěshì wǒ yào xiān huàn qián.
Xiǎo Wú Hǎo. Wǒmen xiān zuò chē qù Zhōngguó Yínháng huàn qián, ránhòu qù shāngdiàn mǎi dōngxì.
Frank Hǎo. Xiàwǔ wǒ xiǎng qù Běihǎi Gōngyuán.
Xiǎo Wú Méi wèntí. Wǎnshang ne?
Frank Wǎnshang wǒmen qù kàn zájì hǎo bu hǎo?
Xiǎo Wú Tài hǎo le. Wǒ qǐng fúwúyuán gěi wǒmen dīng piào.

▶ Dialogue 2

Frank has changed his money, done the shopping and been to Beihai Park. Unfortunately there are no tickets for the acrobatics this evening. So Frank and Xiǎo Wú are planning what to do instead.

- Xiǎo Wú** Jīntiān wǎnshang nǐ xiǎng kàn diànyǐng háishi kàn jīngjù?
Frank Wǒ bù xǐhuan jīngjù.
Xiǎo Wú Nàme wǒmen kàn diànyǐng ba. Diànyǐng bǐ jīngjù yǒu yìsì.
Frank Yǒu mei yǒu yīnyuèhuì?

- Xiǎo Wú** Nǐ xiǎng tīng Zhōngguó yīnyuè háishi tīng Xīfāng yīnyuè?
Frank Zài Zhōngguó dāngrán tīng Zhōngguó yīnyuè.



▶ Dialogue 3

A whole range of activities goes on in Chinese parks in the early morning. Tai Chi is especially popular. Frank decides to go and see for himself.

- Frank** Zǎoshang hǎo!
Passer-by Zǎoshang hǎo!
Frank (*pointing to someone doing Tai Chi*) Tā zài zuò shénme?
Passer-by Tā zài dǎ tàijiquán.
Frank Nèi ge rén yě zài dǎ tàijiquán ma?
Passer-by Bù. Tā zài zuò qìgōng.
Frank Qìgōng gēn tàijiquán yíyàng ma?
Passer-by Bù yíyàng.
Frank Qìgōng bǐ tàijiquán nán ma?
Passer-by Bù yíyàng. Wǒ shuō qìgōng bǐ tàijiquán róngyì.



北海公园 Běihǎi Gōngyuán

Language notes

1 Word order again!

In some ways the Chinese language is much more logical than English in its word order. In English you can say:

First I want to change some money. *or*
I want to change some money *first*.

In Chinese the position of **xiān** (*first*) is not changeable. It comes after **Wǒ yào** (*I want*) but before **huàn diǎnr qián** (*change some money*):

Wǒ yào **xiān** huàn diǎnr qián.

This is because **xiān** is connected with what you want to do, not with what you want; and adverbs like **xiān** precede the verb to which they refer.

2 Time before manner before place (TMP)

In Chinese you say:

I tomorrow at 9am (time) by plane (manner) go to China (place).

You can't say:

I'm going to China by plane at 9am tomorrow.
or I'm going by plane to China at 9am tomorrow.

In Chinese the word order is logical: first you establish *when* you're going to do it, then *how* you're going to do it, and then *where* you're going to do it. So the rule to remember is **Time (T)** comes before **Manner (M)** and **Manner (M)** comes before **Place (P)**; **TMP** for short:

Wǒmen xiān (T) zuò chē (M)
qù Zhōngguó Yínháng (P)
huàn qián. *We'll go to the Bank of China
in the car to change money
first (lit. we first sit car go
China Bank change money).*

Wǒmen shí'èr diǎn zhōng (T)
zài Héping Fàndiàn (P)
chī wǔfàn. *We'll have lunch at the Peace
Hotel at 12.*

As you can see from the second example sometimes only two out of the three elements (TMP) are present but the rule still applies.

3 Either . . . or?

Do you want to go to a film *or* to the opera?

To express the *or* in the sentence above you use **háishi** in Chinese. Of course, you don't have to reverse the subject/verb order to make a question as in English.

All you do is put **háishi** between two statements thereby making them alternatives from which the listener must choose *one*:

Nǐ xiǎng kàn diànyǐng
háishi kàn jīngjù? *Would you like to go to a film or to
the Peking opera? (lit. you fancy
see film or see Peking opera)*

Nǐ xiǎng tīng Zhōngguó
yīnyuè háishi (tīng)
Xīfāng yīnyuè? *Would you like to listen to Chinese
music or Western music?*

If the subject or object in both halves is the same you don't need to repeat it (this holds true for any two clauses, not just ones using **háishi**, and is a feature of Chinese), but there should be a verb in both halves even if it is the same one. However, in colloquial Chinese the second verb is sometimes left out if it is the same as the first one. This is shown in the two examples above.

An exception to this rule is if the verb is **shì** (*to be*). In this case, the second **shì** may be left out. Here is an example of this:

Tā shì nǐde péngyou
háishi nǐde lǎoshī? *Is he your friend or your teacher?*

Try saying **háishi shì** and you'll understand why!

4 To be in the middle of doing something

To show that an action is in progress the word **zài** is put in front of the verb:

Tā zài dǎ tàijíquán. *He's doing Tai Chi.*
Wǒ zài zuò qìgōng. *I'm doing qigong.*
Nǐ zài kàn diànshì. *You're watching TV.*

You will sometimes find the words **zhèng** or **zhèng zài** used in exactly the same way instead of **zài**. They are simply alternatives. **Ne**, at the end of a sentence, can also convey the idea that the

action is in progress; or you might find **ne** occurring with any of the above. Here are a few examples to illustrate this:

Xiǎo Liú zhèngzài tīng yīnyuè (ne).	<i>Xiao Liu is listening to music.</i>
Tāmen zhèng chī wǔfàn ne.	<i>They're in the middle of lunch.</i>
Wǒmen kāi huì ne. Qǐng nǐ míngtiān zài lái.	<i>We're in the middle of a meeting. Please come again tomorrow.</i>

Note that this action in progress can take place in the past, present or future and it is the use of time-words (plus context) which tells us when the action actually takes place:

Míngtiān shàngwǔ tā yídìng zài yóuyǒng (ne).	<i>She'll certainly be swimming tomorrow morning.</i>
Zuótiān wǎnshàng wǒ zài kàn xì (ne).	<i>I was at the theatre yesterday evening.</i>

5 The same or not the same?

In Chinese, to express that one thing is the same as another, or *A is the same as B* you say **A gēn B yíyàng** (*with B yíyàng (the same)*).

A gēn B yíyàng gāo.
A is as tall as B.

Wáng tàitai gēn Lǐ xiǎojie
yíyàng gāo.
Mrs Wang is as tall as Miss Li.

Zhāng xiānsheng gēn tā jiějie
yíyàng pàng.
Mr Zhang is as fat as his elder sister.

To say that A is *not* the same as B you simply put **bù** in front of **yíyàng**:

A gēn B bù yíyàng gāo.
A is not as tall as B.



6 Making comparisons

To say that something is *more . . . than* use **bǐ**:

A bǐ B nán.	<i>A is more difficult than B.</i>
Qìgōng bǐ tàijíquán nán.	<i>Qigong is more difficult than Tai Chi.</i>

Kàn diànyǐng bǐ kàn jīngjù yǒu yìsi.	<i>Going to the cinema (lit. see/watch film) is more interesting than watching Peking opera.</i>
---	--

It is important to note that **bù bǐ** does not mean *less . . . than*. Look carefully at the following examples:

Tā bù bǐ wǒ dà.	<i>He is no older than I.</i>
Wǒ jiějie bù bǐ nǐ gāo.	<i>My elder sister is no taller than you.</i>

7 Helping verbs

Verbs such as *want, ought to, must, can* occur before action verbs or verbal expressions:

Nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?	<i>What would you like to do?</i>
Wǒ xiǎng qù mǎi dōngxì.	<i>I'd like to go shopping.</i>

Wǒ gāi qù.	<i>I ought to go.</i>
Tā yào zǒu.	<i>She wants to leave.</i>
Nǐ huì shuō Hànyǔ ma?	<i>Can you speak Chinese?</i>

Tāmen xǐhuan mǎi dōngxì.	<i>They like shopping.</i>
--------------------------	----------------------------

Note the difference between **xiǎng** (*would like to do, fancy doing, something*) and **xǐhuan** (*like*).

Unlike other types of verbs which can take endings to indicate, for example, that something has taken place or to show direction, these 'helping' or auxiliary verbs cannot have anything added to them.

8 To give or not to give

Gěi basically means *to give*, but it can be used with a noun or pronoun (referring to a person or living thing) *before* the verb to mean *to do something for someone or something*.

Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn.

I'll take a look for you.

Tā gěi wǒ kāikāi.

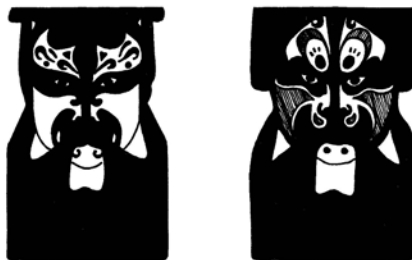
He opened up for me.

Wǒ qǐng fúwùyuán gěi wǒmēn dīng piào.

I'll ask the attendant to book tickets for us.

i Chinese traditional music sounds very different from Western music. If you ever have the chance to see Peking opera, do take it. You may decide never to go again but it is certainly worth trying once, just for the experience! The make-up and costumes are very elaborate and give you all sorts of information about the characters being portrayed, so try to go with somebody who knows something about Peking opera. Most people enjoy the battles and the acrobatics if not the singing!

Examples of Peking opera masks



You might have heard of **tàijí** (often written **Tai Chi** in the West) or of **qìgōng** which are forms of exercise practised for hundreds of years in China. Some forms of **qìgōng** are thought to be beneficial to cancer sufferers and people are encouraged to go to regular classes (usually in the local park early in the morning around 6am) as part of their treatment and recovery programme.

Why not try out a **tàijí** or **qìgōng** class yourself? Ask at your local library for information. You are likely to meet other people in the class who are interested in learning Chinese and with whom you can practise, chat and exchange ideas.

Practice

1 Tā/tāmen zài zuò shénme? *What is he/she doing? What are they doing?*

Look at the pictures below and say what the people are doing using the pattern above.



a mǎi dōngxi



b kàn zájì



c huàn qián



d dǎ tàijíquán



e kàn diànyǐng



f tīng yīnyuè

2 Look at the pictures in Exercise 1. Suppose these are the things you plan to do at the weekend. Draw up a plan and say when you are going to do what. Expressions of time can either occur before the verb, or at the beginning of the sentence if you want to give them more emphasis. Look at these examples:

Xīngqīliù shàngwǔ wǒ yào qù zuò qìgōng.

Xīngqītiān wǎnshàng wǒ xiǎng qù kàn diànyǐng.

3 Tāmen yíyàng ma? *Are they the same?*

gāo tall

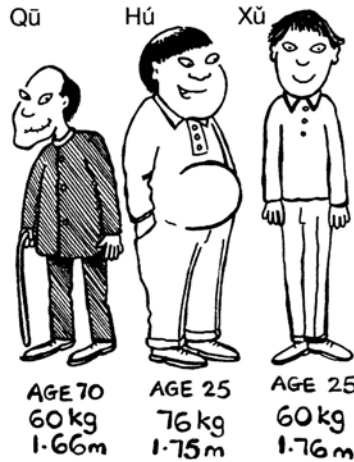
dà old

xiǎo young (used when comparing ages)

zhòng heavy

Answer the following questions using yíyàng or bù yíyàng.

- Qū gēn Xǔ yíyàng gāo ma?
- Xǔ gēn Hú yíyàng dà ma?
- Qū gēn Hú yíyàng zhòng ma?
- Xǔ gēn Hú yíyàng gāo ma?
- Qū gēn Xǔ yíyàng zhòng ma?
- Hú gēn Qū yíyàng dà ma?



- 4 According to the information in Exercise 3, are the following statements true or false? If true, say **duì**. If false, say **bú duì** and say what is true.

- | | duì | bú duì |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| a Hú bǐ Xǔ gāo. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b Hú bù bǐ Qū zhòng. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c Xǔ bǐ Hú dà. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d Qū bǐ Xǔ dà. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| e Hú gēn Xǔ bǐ Qū xiǎo. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- 5 The following is what Mr Jones (Qióngsī xiānsheng) has put in his diary. Answer the questions below according to what is written in the diary.

Monday evening - learn Chinese

Tuesday morning - meeting

Wednesday morning - go to a concert

Thursday afternoon - meet a friend

Friday evening - see a film

Saturday - shopping

- change money

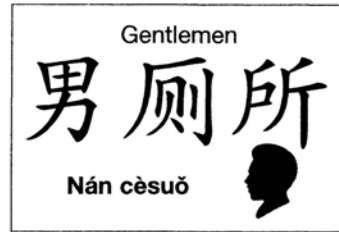
Sunday - learn Tai Chi

- Qióngsī xiānsheng xīngqīliù háishi xīngqītiān xué tàijíquán?
- Tā shénme shíhou qù kàn péngyou?
- Tā xīngqīsān wǎnshang qù tīng yīnyuèhuì háishi xīngqīsì wǎnshang qù?
- Tā xīngqī'èr shàngwǔ kāi huì háishi xiàwǔ kāi huì?
- Tā shénme shíhou qù mǎi dōngxi?

Quick review

- Ask your Chinese friend what she would like to do tomorrow.
- Say Xiǎo Mǎ and her elder sister are as tall as each other.
- Say you find acrobatics more interesting than Peking opera.
- Ask Xiǎo Zhào where he would like to go this evening.
- Ask Miss Lǐ whether she would like to see a film or go to a concert.

The following signs should come in useful.



Before you start

You will get to grips with Chinese money in this unit and be able to comment on the prices of things. You will also master basic colours and learn how to make more complex comparisons.

Let's try

Tomorrow evening it is your turn to entertain your business colleagues from China.

- You don't know whether to take them to a concert or to a play (*kàn xì*) so what do you ask them?
- They want to go to a concert. How do you ask them whether they like Western music?
- They assure you that in the West they want to listen to Western music so what do they say to you?

Key words and phrases

bǎi	<i>hundred</i>
búcuò	<i>pretty good, not bad</i>
cái	<i>not . . . until, only then</i>
dào	<i>to arrive, to go to</i>
deduō	<i>much (more)</i>
duōle	<i>much (more)</i>
jǐ	<i>crowded</i>
jiàn	<i>(measure word for clothes)</i>
jīn	<i>half a kilogram</i>
jìn	<i>near, close</i>
jiù	<i>just; only</i>
kěshi	<i>but</i>
kuài	<i>(unit of money)</i>
lí	<i>distance from</i>
lóu	<i>floor</i>
mài	<i>to sell</i>
máoyī	<i>woollen pullover</i>
něi/nǎ?	<i>which?</i>
nèi/nà	<i>that</i>
shìchǎng	<i>market</i>
shìhé	<i>to suit</i>
shìshi	<i>to try</i>
tài . . . le!	<i>too . . . !</i>
tián	<i>sweet</i>
xīnxiān	<i>fresh</i>

07

duōshao qián? how much is it?

In this unit you will learn

- how to ask for things (in shops)
- how to ask the price
- how to state quantities
- numbers 100–1,000
- how to express the distance between two points

yuǎn	far
zánmen	we / us (including listener)
zhàn	(bus) stop, station
zhèi/zhè	this
zhèr	here, this place
zhème (guì)	so (expensive)
ziyóu	free, freedom
zǒu lù	to walk, on foot
zuì	the most

Fruits

cǎoméi	strawberry
píngguǒ	apple
pútao	grape
xiāngjiāo	banana

Questions and phrases

A lí B duō yuǎn?	How far is A from B?
A lí B hěn jìn/yuǎn.	A is close to / far from B
duō cháng?	how long?
duō yuǎn?	how far?
duōshao?	how much? how many?
Duōshao qián yì jīn? }	How much is it for half a kilo?
Yì jīn duōshao qián? }	
... kěyǐ ma?	Can I...? Is it allowed...?
Nín mǎi shénme?	What would you like (to buy)?
Wǒ yào...	I want...
shénme yánsè (de)?	what colour?
... xíng ma?	Is it OK? Can I...?
X zěnme mài?	How much is X?

Colours

hóng(sè) (de)	red	lán(sè) (de)	blue
huáng(sè) (de)	yellow	bái(sè) (de)	white
lǜ(sè) (de)	green	hēi(sè) (de)	black

Learning tips

Here are two more pairs: **lu** and **lǚ**, **nu** and **nǚ**.

Go back to the **Pronunciation guide** and read the notes there. You will need a mirror for the next exercise.

First of all push out your lips and say *oo*. Then tighten them and say *you*. Repeat this but put **l** in front of the *oo*. Now you have the sound **lu**. To say **lǚ** say the word *lewd* without the *d*. For **nu** and **nǚ** say the *noo* of *noodles* and the *nu* of *nude*! Now look in the mirror and say the sounds again. What do you notice about your lips when you say the two different sounds?

You have to tighten them to say the **ü** sound don't you? For those of you who know a little French or German the **ü** in Chinese is like the *u* in *tu* (French) or the *ü* in *über* (German).

Ju, **qu** and **xu** are also pronounced as though they were written with **ü**. Don't confuse them with **zhu**, **chu**, and **shu** where the **u** is the *oo* sound.

Numbers 100–1,000

100	yībǎi	300	sānbǎi
200	èrbǎi	308	sānbǎi líng bā
202	èrbǎi líng èr	410	sìbǎi yīshí
210	èrbǎi yīshí	794	qībǎi jiǔshísi
225	èrbǎi èrshíwǔ	1,000	yīqiān

Think of a number as being made up of units, tens and hundreds. If there is a zero in the tens column, you have to say **líng** (zero) in Chinese.

Ten is **shí** in Chinese but when it occurs with *one hundred*, *two hundred*, and so on you have to say *one ten*: **yīshí**, so 110 is **yībǎi yīshí**.

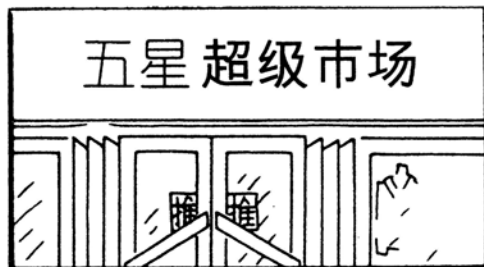
Dialogues

Dialogue 1

It may not be easy to get what you want in a shop despite the polite service you get. This customer knows what she wants and what she doesn't want, as this dialogue shows:

	(at the information point)
Customer	Qǐng wèn, zài nǎr mǎi máoyī?
Assistant	Zài èr lóu. (at knitwear counter)
Assistant	Nín mǎi shénme?
Customer	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yí jiàn máoyī.
Assistant	Yào nǎi jiàn? Nín xīhuan shénme yánsè de?

- Customer** Nèi jiàn hóng sè de gěi wǒ kànkan xíng ma?
Assistant Zhèi jiàn hěn hǎo.
Customer O, tài dà le. Nèi jiàn huáng sè de wǒ shìshì kěyǐ ma?
Assistant Zhèi jiàn yě búcuò.
Customer O, tài xiǎo le.
Assistant Zhèi jiàn lán sè de hěn shìhé nǐ.
Customer Tài hǎo le. Duōshao qián?
Assistant Wǔbǎi kuài.
Customer Nn, tài guì le. Duìbuqǐ, xièxie nǐ.
Assistant



Wǔxīng chāoji shìchǎng
Five star supermarket

i In Chinese the ground floor is **yī lóu**, (*lit.* one floor), the first floor is **èr lóu** (*lit.* two floor), the second floor **sān lóu** (*lit.* three floor), the third floor **sì lóu** (*lit.* four floor) and so on.

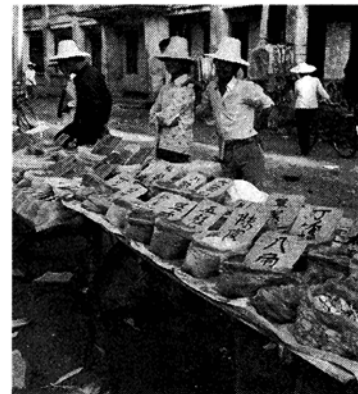
Dialogue 2

If you can't get what you want in one shop, you can try somewhere else. This is what Xiǎo Fāng is suggesting to Ann.

- Fāng** Wǒmen qù zìyóu shìchǎng kànkan ba.
Ann Hǎo. Zìyóu shìchǎng lí zhèr duō yuǎn?
Fāng Hěn jìn. Zuò chē liǎng, sān zhàn jiù dào le.
Ann Chē tài jǐ le. Zánmen zǒu lù qù ba.
Fāng Kěshì zǒu lù tài yuǎn le.
Ann Zǒu lù yào duō cháng shíjiān?
Fāng Zǒu lù èr, sānshí fēnzhōng cái néng dào.
Ann Hǎo ba. Nàme zánmen zuò chē qù ba.

Dialogue 3

There are markets throughout China where you can probably bargain. This is what you might hear at a fruit stall.



- Buyer** Píngguǒ zěnmè mài?
Seller Sì kuài yì jīn.
Buyer Zhēn guì! Tāmende píngguǒ sān kuài bā yì jīn.
Seller Kěshì wǒde píngguǒ bǐ tāmende dà yidiǎnr.
Buyer Pútáo duōshao qián yì jīn?
Seller Sì kuài liǎng máo wǔ yì jīn.
Buyer Zhème guì! Tāmen de sì kuài yì jīn.
Seller Kěshì wǒde pútáo bǐ tāmende tián duōle.
Buyer Cǎoméi yì jīn duōshao qián?
Seller Bā kuài èr.
Buyer Tài guì le!
Seller Kěshì wǒde cǎoméi bǐ tāmen de xīnxiān deduō.
Buyer Nǐde dōngxi zuì guì.
Seller Kěshì wǒde dōngxi zuì hǎo!

斤斤计较 Jīn jīn jìjiào (Chinese proverb)
Haggle over every ounce, quibble over small differences

Language notes

1 More on measure words

You have already met in Unit 4 the measure words **běn** (for books and magazines) and **zhāng** (for rectangular or square flat objects), together with the most common measure word of all, **gè**.

Some measure words like *jīn* (half a kilogram) and *bēi* (cup) are actually indicators of quantity. The table below lists some of the more common of these:

Pinyin	Category	Examples
bǎ	objects with a handle, chairs	<i>knife, umbrella, toothbrush, chair</i>
bāo	parcel, packet	<i>cigarettes, noodles</i>
bēi	cup, glass	<i>tea, coffee, wine</i>
běn	volume	<i>book, dictionary</i>
fēng		<i>letter</i>
gè	people, things which do not fall into other categories; substitute MW	<i>person, student</i>
jiàn	piece, article	<i>clothes, luggage</i>
jīn	indicator of quantity (0.5 kilogram)	<i>fruit, vegetables</i>
kuài	piece	<i>soap, land</i>
lǐ	indicator of length (1/3 mile, 0.5 km)	<i>road</i>
liàng	things with wheels	<i>car, bicycle</i>
píng	bottles, jars	<i>beer, wine, jam</i>
tiáo	long and winding; carton (e.g. 200)	<i>towel, trousers, fish; cigarettes</i>
wèi	people (polite)	<i>teacher, lady, gentleman</i>
zhāng	flat, rectangular objects	<i>ticket, blanket, table, paper, map</i>

Note that *gōngjīn* (lit. public pound) is a *kilogram*, *gōnglǐ* (lit. public li) is a *kilometre* and *yīnglǐ* (lit. English li) is a *mile*.

2 Money, money, money . . . !

Chinese money operates the decimal system and the currency in China is known as *rénmínbì* (the *people's currency*). Foreign currency is known as *wàibì* (lit. external/outside currency).

The largest single unit is the *yuán* 元 (written as ¥ in many transactions). There are ten *jiǎo* 角 in one *yuán* and ten *fēn* 分 in one *jiǎo*. These are the words (and Chinese characters) used in the written language and printed on banknotes, tickets, etc. so it is important to recognize them.

You saw how the characters for 1 to 10 were written in Unit 3. Don't be put off by the more complex characters you will see on Chinese banknotes. This also goes for the character 元 which is written 圆 on banknotes. These prevent confusion (and forgery!) when numbers are being written out in financial transactions.

In spoken Chinese, *kuài* 块 piece/lump is used for *yuán* and *máo* 毛 for *jiǎo* but *fēn* remains unchanged.



RMB	Spoken	Written
0.01 yuán	yì fēn (qián)	yì fēn
0.1 yuán	yì máo (qián)	yì máo
1.00 yuán	yí kuài (qián)	yì yuán
5.5 yuán	wǔ kuài wǔ or wǔ kuài bàn	wǔ yuán wǔ jiǎo
14.32 yuán	shísi kuài sān máo èr	shísi yuán sān jiǎo èr fēn
30.09 yuán	sānshí kuài líng* jiǔ fēn	sānshí yuán líng* jiǔ fēn

* If a sum of money involves *kuài* and *fēn* but no *máo* the absence of *máo* is marked by a *líng* (zero).

When two or more different units of currency are used together, the last one is often omitted:

sì kuài liù rather than sì kuài liù máo ¥4.60
bā máo qī rather than bā máo qī fēn ¥0.87

3 Too much?

Tài (*too*) is almost always with le:

tài xiǎo le *too small*
tài guì le *too expensive*
tài hǎo le *excellent, great*

It is probably better just to accept this as a rule rather than try to analyze it!

4 How far is A from B?

To say A is a long way from B, where A and B are fixed points, use:

A lí (*separate*) B hěn yuǎn (*far*)

If you don't use hěn (*very*), some sort of comparison is implied, i.e. A is a long way from B (but near to C). Thus in Chinese, as we have said before, hěn is very weak.

Lúndūn lí Àidīngbǎo *London is a long way from*
hěn yuǎn. *Edinburgh.*

To say A is near B use: A lí B hěn jìn (*near*).

Niújīn lí Lúndūn hěn jìn. *Oxford is close to London.*

To say exactly how far A is from B use: A lí B yǒu + the distance.

Yǒu (*to have*) can also have the meaning *there is/there are*.

Jiànqiáo (*Cambridge*) lí Niújīn *Cambridge is 160 kilometres*
yǒu yībǎiliùshí gōnglǐ. *from Oxford.*

A and B can also be fixed points in time. To say how far A is from B *in time* use: A lí B yǒu + time difference.

Nǐde shēngri lí jīntiān hái *There are still four days*
yǒu sì tiān. *to go to your birthday*
(lit. your birthday separate
today still have four days).

5 Approximate numbers

If you want to say two or three (people) in Chinese, you put the words for two (of a pair) and three one after another with a pause-mark in between them:

liǎng, sān ge rén *two or three people*
wú, liù běn shū *five or six books*

20 or 30 is èr, sānshí: the shí is only said *once*.

45 or 46 is sìshíwǔ, liù: the sìshí is only said *once*.

6 We, including you!

Both zánmen and wǒmen mean *we* and *us*. The difference is that zánmen specifically includes the listener(s) in what is being said.

A says to his sister:

Zánmen bàba, māma duì *Our Mum and Dad were very*
wǒmen hěn hǎo shì bu shì? *good to us, weren't they?*

Zánmen here has a more intimate feel to it than wǒmen.

7 More on comparisons

You have already met bǐ in Unit 6, p. 63:

Chī fàn bǐ hē jiǔ yǒu yìsi. *Eating is more interesting than*
consuming alcohol.

To say that A is *much* more . . . than B use:

A bǐ B adjective/verb duōle.

or

A bǐ B adjective/verb deduō.

Zhè jiàn máoyī bǐ nài jiàn *This sweater is much bigger*
dà duōle. *than that one.*

Cǎoméi bǐ píngguǒ guì *Strawberries are much more*
deduō. *expensive than apples.*

To say that A is a little more . . . than B use: A bǐ B adjective/
verb yìdiǎnr.

Wǒde shuǐguǒ (*fruit*) bǐ tāde *My fruit is a little fresher*
shuǐguǒ xīnxiān yìdiǎnr. *than his.*

8 Be the best!

You only have to put the little word **zuì** (*most*) in front of **hǎo** to make it into *the best*! Look carefully at the following examples using **zuì**:

zuì hǎo	<i>the best (lit. most good)</i>
zuì guì	<i>the most expensive</i>
zuì tián	<i>the sweetest</i>

You can put **de** + noun after the examples to make such phrases as:

zuì hǎo de pútáo	<i>the best grapes</i>
zuì guì de cǎoméi	<i>the most expensive strawberries</i>
zuì tián de píngguǒ	<i>the sweetest apples</i>

9 Cǎi and jiù

Both **cǎi** and **jiù** are adverbs indicating something about time. **Cǎi** indicates that something takes place later or with more difficulty than had been expected. **Jiù**, on the other hand, indicates that something takes place earlier or more promptly than expected:

Tā sì diǎn zhōng cǎi lái. *He didn't come until four (though I had asked him to come at 3.15).*

Tāmen liù diǎn bàn jiù lái le. *They were there by 6.30 (though we had invited them for seven).*

Cǎi often translates as *not . . . until*. **Jiù** usually has a **le** at the end of the sentence to convey a sense of completion whereas **cǎi** does not. **Jiù** will sometimes have **zǎo** (*early*) in front of it as well as **le** at the end.

Both **cǎi** and **jiù** must come immediately before the verb whatever else there is in the sentence. Look carefully at the following examples:

Zuò chē liǎng , sān zhàn jiù dào le. *It's only two or three stops on the bus.*

Zóu lù èr , sānshí fēnzhōng cǎi néng dào. *It will take as much as 20 or 30 minutes on foot (if we walk).*

Zuótiān hěn lěng dànshì jīntiān cǎi xià xuě. *Yesterday was very cold but it didn't snow until today.*

Wǒ xiànzài cái zhīdao Fǎguó dōngxì guì. *It's only now that I know things in France are expensive.*

Wǒ zǎo jiù zhīdao le. *I knew ages ago (that things in France are expensive).*

Learning tips

What do you do if you don't understand?

- 1 Don't panic and don't give up listening.
- 2 Try to concentrate on what you do understand and guess the rest. If there comes a point where you really feel you can't understand anything, isolate the phrase or word(s) that is causing you problems and say to the speaker:

. . . . shì shénme yìsi? *What does . . . mean?*

Hopefully he or she will say it in another way that you will be able to understand. Remember the two useful sentences you learnt in Unit 3:

Qǐng nǐ zài shuō yí biàn. *Please say it again.*
Qǐng nǐ shuō màn yìdiǎn. *Please speak more slowly.*

i Most Chinese people are expert bargainers. A lot of selling is done from street stalls or with articles laid out on a piece of cloth on the ground. In these circumstances it is possible to bargain. If you are interested in buying something, point to it and say:

Zhè ge duōshao qián? *How much is this?*

Having got a price, one way is to start by halving it and to say:

Wǒ zhǐ néng gěi nǐ X kuài. *I can only give you X kuai.*

And then the fun starts with the two of you negotiating a price that you both find acceptable. It is a good policy to decide from the outset how much you are prepared to pay for something so that you have that in mind when bargaining. If neither of you can agree on a price, you can finish the bargaining by saying:

Xièxie, wǒ bù mǎi le. *Thank you, I won't buy it then.*

and walking away. Sometimes if you are lucky, the vendor will rush after you and offer it to you for the last price you offered or one very similar.



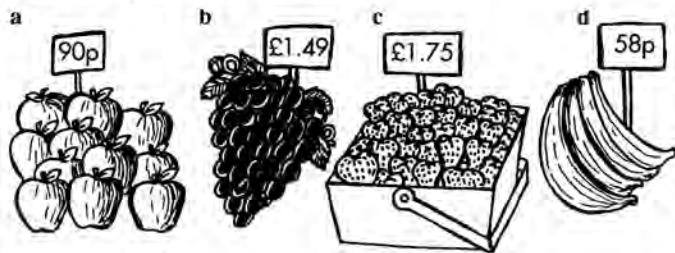
Fruit and vegetables sold from stalls are normally offered at a certain price and if you think it's too expensive, you just don't buy them. Don't buy from anyone whose prices are not shown until you have ascertained how much they are. The Chinese are very good at charging fellow-Chinese one price and foreigners another (naturally more expensive). Unfortunately it is very hard to check whether they are giving you the correct weight as they often use a pole with weights on one end and a pan (to hold the purchased fruit on) on the other. There is no bargaining in ordinary shops and department stores.

Practice

- 1 Say the following prices in Chinese.
Example: ¥ 4.03 sì kuài líng sān fēn

a ¥0.52 c ¥12.76 e ¥205.54
b ¥2.25 d ¥99.99 f ¥8.07

- 2 Duōshao qián? How much is it?



Tell your Chinese friend how much these fruits cost in your local town. You need to know the words *yīng bàng* (a pound in money) and *biānshì* (pence).

Example: Píngguǒ yī jīn wǔshíbā biānshì.
Pútao yī bàng sì-jiǔ yì jīn.

Note that in prices over £1 which include pence, *shí* (ten) is left out where the number of pence is ten or more. The number of pence are treated as separate digits, for example, £1.45 is *yī bàng sì-wǔ*. One *jīn* (used all over China) is equivalent to half a kilogram or a little over a pound in weight.

- 3 You want to buy the following vegetables in a Chinese market, but they are not priced. Ask the greengrocer the prices by filling in the blanks in the questions below:

xīhóngshì (tomato) ¥0.65 a jīn
báicài (Chinese leaves) ¥0.42 a jīn
tǔdòu (potato) ¥0.28 a jīn

- a You _____ mài?
Greengrocer Liù máo wǔ yì jīn.
b You _____ yì jīn _____ qián?
Greengrocer Yì jīn sì máo èr.
c You _____ qián yì jīn?
Greengrocer Liǎng máo bā yì jīn.

- 4 Listen to the recording and write down the items mentioned and their prices. We've done the first for you. If you get really stuck look at what is said in the Key to the exercises.

a yú (fish) ¥7.09
b ¥
c ¥
d ¥
e ¥

- 5 What would you say in the following situations?

Example: Situation – It's freezing today.
You could say – Jīntiān tài lěng (cold) le.

- a You've tried on a pullover and found it too big.
b It is 30°C today. (rè = hot)
c She's got too much money!
d The ticket to a match costs £150.
e You have studied French for years and still cannot speak it. (i.e. French is too difficult).

6 Make comparisons with the information given using the pattern

A bǐ B adjective

or

A bǐ B adjective (yìdiǎnr, deduō or duōle):

Example: cǎoméi ¥8.50/jīn, pútáo ¥6.30/jīn
Cǎoméi bǐ pútáo guì duōle.

- | | | |
|---|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a | Nǎ ge guì? (bǐ) | Píngguǒ ¥4.00/jīn;
Pútáo ¥4.10/jīn |
| b | Tāmen shéi gāo? (yìdiǎnr) | Xiǎo Wáng 1.73m;
Lǎo Lǐ 1.70m |
| c | Nǎ ge dìfāng rè? (duōle) | Běijīng 29°C; Lúndūn 17°C |
| d | Tāmen shéi dà? (deduō) | Bái xiānsheng 58;
Bái tài tai 48 |

7 Use either **cái** or **jiù** to fill in the blanks.

- a Wǔ diǎn kāi huì, tā sì diǎn bàn ____ lái le.
b Nǐ hái bù zhīdao ma? Wǒ zuótiān (*yesterday*) ____ zhīdao le.
c Duìbuqǐ, Lǐ lǎoshī jīntiān bù néng lái. Tā míngtiān ____ lái.
d Tā bù xiǎng míngtiān qù, tā xiǎng xiànzài ____ qù.
e Yīnyuèhuì qī diǎn kāishǐ (*start*), tā qī diǎn yí kè ____ lái.

Quick review

How do you say:

- a It will take only five minutes to get there.
b It will take (as long as) 50 minutes to get there.
c In my family my father is the oldest.
d The cinema is not far from my home.
e Bananas cost 49p per pound.

08

what's it like?
zěnmeyàng?

In this unit you will learn

- how to ask about sizes
- how to talk about clothes and shoes
- how to describe things
- how to express likes and dislikes
- how to make comparisons

Before you start

This unit will give you the necessary vocabulary and structures to ask people their opinions about things: *Nǐ kàn zěnmeyàng?* (*What's it like?*) and to make comparisons *Zhè ge méi yǒu nà ge hǎo* (*This one is not as good as that one*).

Let's try

Refer back to **Dialogue 1** and **Dialogue 3** in Unit 7 and answer the following questions:

- 1 Did the customer buy a pullover? Why?
- 2 How did the fruitseller justify his prices being higher than other people's? Give four reasons.

Key words and phrases

bù zěnmeyàng	not so good
dàxiǎo	size
fēicháng	extremely
gèng	even more
guò	to pass or spend (of time)
hái kěyǐ	just so so
héshì	suitable
jiàqī	holiday, vacation
juéde	to feel, think
kuài	fast
màn	slow
měi	every
měi tiān	every day
mō(mo)	to feel, touch
nǎi nǎi	not really (response to a compliment)
nánkàn	ugly
piányi	cheap
xià yǔ	to rain
xīn	new
xīn mǎi de	newly bought
xué(xí)	to learn, study
yánsè	colour
Yìdàlì	Italy

yǐhòu	later, in future
yǐqián	before, in the past
Yīngwén	English language
yǒu yidiǎn(r)	a little
yòu... yòu...	both... and...
zǎo jiù	ages ago, for ages
zěnméi le?	what is / was the matter?
zěnmeyàng?	how is it? how about it?
zhāng	(measure word for flat objects)
zhiliàng	quality
zhǐ yào	only need / cost
zhǔyì	idea
zúqiú	football

Learning tips

Here's another set of pairs:

j and q
zh and ch
sh and r

Go back to the **Pronunciation guide** again and read the notes there.

The **j** in Chinese is the same as our own. Say *jeans*, in the same way as you would say 'cheese' to the camera, a few times and observe your mouth in a mirror. You will notice that the corners of your mouth are drawn back as far as they can go.

Q bears no resemblance to our **q**. It is pronounced *in exactly the same way as j* but you put air behind it to make the **q**. You have already done some practice on **q** in Unit 1, p. 5, but as it is so different from **q** in English it is worth looking at again.

For **zh**, **ch**, **sh** and **r** you must curl your tongue back in a loose sausage-roll. They are all pronounced with the tongue in this position. **Zh** and **ch** are identical sounds except the **ch** is said with air behind it.

R is the one to watch. Listen to the recording carefully and try to reproduce the sounds you hear as closely as possible. Recording your own voice and then comparing it with the original would be extremely helpful at this stage.

Dialogues

▶ Dialogue 1

Sùlán is showing her newly bought pullover to her boyfriend Colin. She is very pleased with it as the price was reduced. But what does Colin think of it?

Sùlán Zhè shì wǒ
xīn mǎi de
máoyī. Nǐ kàn
zěnmeyàng?

Colin Búcuò, búcuò.
Sùlán Dàxiǎo héshì ma?

Colin En, yǒu diǎnr dà.

Sùlán Yánsè hǎokàn ma?

Colin En, bù nánkàn.

Sùlán Nǐ mōmo... Nǐ juéde zhiliáng zěnmeyàng?

Colin En, hái kěyǐ. Duōshao qián?

Sùlán Bú guì, zhǐ yào yībǎi wǔshí kuài.

Colin Shénme?! Yībǎi wǔshí kuài wǒ kěyǐ mǎi sān zhāng zúqú piào!



Dà jiǎn jià
Big reductions

▶ Dialogue 2

Mr Li and Mrs Law are just back from holiday. How were their respective holidays?

Mrs Law Jiàqī guò-de hǎo ma?

Mr Li Fēicháng hǎo, jiù shì dōngxì bù piányì.

Mrs Law Wǒ zǎo jiù zhīdao le.

Mr Li Wǒ yīqián juéde Yīngguó de dōngxì guì, xiànzài cái zhīdao Fǎguó de dōngxì gèng guì.

Mrs Law Yídàlì de dōngxì yě hěn guì shì bu shì?

Mr Li Yídàlì de dōngxì yě bù bǐ Fǎguó de piányì. Nǐ de jiàqī guò-de zěnmeyàng?

Mrs Law Bù zěnmeyàng.

Mr Li Zěnme le?

Mrs Law Měi tiān dōu xià yǔ.

▶ Dialogue 3

Martin is learning Chinese. He has met a Chinese girl who is studying English. What is their plan?

Bǎojié Nǐde Zhōngwén shuō-de zhēn hǎo.

Martin Nǎli, nǎli. Wǒde Zhōngwén méi yǒu nǐde Yīngwén hǎo.

Bǎojié Bù. Nǐde Zhōngwén bǐ wǒde Yīngwén hǎo deduō.

Martin Yǐhòu wǒ bāng nǐ xué Yīngwén, nǐ bāng wǒ xué Zhōngwén, zěnmeyàng?

Bǎojié Hǎo zhǔyi. Kěshì wǒ xué-de bú kuài.

Martin Měi guānxi, wǒ xué-de yě hěn màn.

Language notes

1 A bit . . . ?

To say something is *a little/bit* . . . use:

adjective + (yì)diǎnr

hao (yì)diǎnr

a bit better

dà (yì)diǎnr

a little older/bigger

(See also p. 77 where adjective + yìdiǎnr is used in comparisons.)

When you wish to convey a negative feeling even if it is only subjective on your part, then yǒu (yì)diǎnr is put in front of the adjective:

Yǒu (yì)diǎnr guì.

It's a bit on the expensive side.

Yóu (yì)diǎnr dà.

It's a little on the big side.

In all these examples you can miss out the yì to sound more colloquial.

2 How well do you speak Chinese?

When you are describing how the action of a verb is carried out, such as *quickly, slowly, well*, you use de after the verb and then the word for *quick, slow, good*, and so on.

You do *not* have to change them into adverbs as in English – quick-quickly, good-well.

Nǐde Zhōngwén shuō-de zěnmeyàng?

What's your Chinese like?

Wǒde Zhōngwén shuō-de bú hǎo.

I don't speak Chinese well.

Wǒ xué-de bú kuài.

I don't learn fast.

This **de** is different from the **de** you met in Units 3 and 5 but they are written the same in pinyin and both are toneless. They are represented by two entirely different Chinese characters however.

When sentences of this kind have an object you can either repeat the verb after the object adding **de** to the second verb:

Wǒ xué Zhōngwén xué-de hěn màn.

subject verb object

(I'm learning Chinese very slowly.)

Tā kàn shū kàn-de hěn duō. *He reads a lot.*

Or you can miss out the first verb and have the object coming straight after the subject followed by the verb with **de**:

Nǐ Rìyǔ shuō-de zěnmeyàng? *What's your Japanese like?*
object

Wǒ Rìyǔ shuō-de bù hǎo. *My Japanese is not very good.*

3 What's it like?

Zěnmeyàng (*What's it like? How?*) is a useful question word in Chinese. As you saw in Unit 2, p. 17 with **shéi** (*who*) and **shénme** (*what*), question words appear in the same position as the word or words which replace them in the answer:

Nǐ kàn zěnmeyàng?	<i>What do you think?</i>
Nǐ mōmo. Nǐ juéde zhìliàng zěnmeyàng?	<i>Feel it. What do you think of the quality?</i>
Jiàqī guò-de zěnmeyàng?	<i>How was your holiday?</i>
(Guò-de) bù zěnmeyàng.	<i>Not very good / not up to much.</i>

Note the neat expression **bù zěnmeyàng** (*not up to much*) in response to a question containing the question word **zěnmeyàng**.

4 Even more!

To say *even more expensive* in Chinese you only have to put the little word **gèng** in front of **guì**:

gèng guì	<i>even more expensive</i>
gèng piányi	<i>even cheaper, still cheaper</i>
gèng kuài	<i>even quicker, even more quickly</i>

Tā bǐ wǒ xué-de gèng màn. *He learns even more slowly than I do.*

You will sometimes find **hái** (*still*) used instead of **gèng**, but the meaning remains exactly the same:

Nǐ bǐ tā xiě-de hái hǎo. *You write even better than she does.*

5 Even more on comparisons!

You have already met **bǐ** in Unit 6, p. 63 and in Unit 7, p. 77. If you wish to say that something (A) is not up to a certain standard as represented by another person, living thing or object (B) use:

A méi yǒu B *adjective/verb*

Wǒde Zhōngwén (A) méi yǒu nǐde Yīngwén (B) hǎo.	<i>My Chinese is not as good as your English.</i>
Nǐde qìchē méi yǒu wǒde (qìchē) kuài.	<i>Your car is not as fast as mine.</i>

You will sometimes find **nàme** or **zhème** (*so*) in front of the adjective:

Zhè jiàn máoyī de dàxiǎo méi yǒu nà jiàn (máoyī de dàxiǎo) nàme héshì.	<i>This sweater doesn't fit as well as that one (lit. This MW sweater's size not up to that MW (sweater's size) so suitable).</i>
--	---

This construction can also be used in the positive form by omitting **méi**, but it is not nearly so common as the negative form:

Wǒ jiějie yǒu nǐ gēge gāo. *My elder sister is as tall as your elder brother.*

6 Each and every!

Měi (*each/every*) is often reinforced by putting **dōu** (*both/all*) before the verb:

Měi tiān dōu xià yǔ.	<i>It rains/rained every day.</i>
Tā měi nián dōu qù Zhōngguó.	<i>He goes to China every year.</i>

In the example above, it is clear that **dōu** has to refer back to **měi nián** rather than to **tā** which is singular.

Tiān and nián don't need a measure word between měi and themselves because they act as measure words as well as nouns, but other nouns do:

měi ge jiàqī every holiday; měi jiàn máoyī every sweater

Note that the measure word between měi and rén is optional.

Learning tips

Don't worry about making mistakes!

The important thing is to keep talking. People quickly lose interest in talking to you if you look at them blankly and don't respond. Say something. Use gestures to help you out and don't worry about the mistakes. Don't be too ambitious in the initial stages – use vocabulary you know even if it means you have to keep the conversation simple. If all else fails, use a word in English (the foreign language most likely to be known by Chinese speakers), clearly pronounced, to keep things moving.

The Chinese are normally so delighted that someone has made the effort to learn their language that they are very patient and make enormous allowances for your accent and poor tones (or lack of them!), and are always very complimentary about your efforts.



Chéngjī
Achievements

Quēdiǎn
Shortcomings

Cuòwù
Mistakes

i Following on from the above, even if your Chinese is very poor you will usually be told how good it is! The correct response to such compliments is either **Guòjiǎng, guòjiǎng** (you praise me too much), or **Nǎli, nǎli lit. where, where?** (meaning that you don't see it the way

they do!). Self-deprecation is definitely a Chinese art – you are invited to somebody's house and the table is groaning with delicious food and you are told that it is only **biànfàn** (simple/convenience food). The cook asks you to forgive his/her poor cooking when you can see that the opposite is the case. Examples such as these are endless and come under the general heading of **kèqi huà** (polite talk). You will find more examples of **kèqi huà** later on in the book. Why not start making a list of them for your own interest? Note people's self-deprecatory remarks and other people's responses to them.

Never give Chinese friends white flowers. White is the colour for mourning in China. Be circumspect with red too – it's the colour associated with weddings (the bride's dress is traditionally red though with Western influence this is also changing). At Chinese New Year presents of money are given in little red envelopes (**hóng bāo**), and couplets expressing good luck and good fortune for the coming year are written on red paper and pasted on people's doors.

Practice

1 Match up the opposites:

- | | |
|----------|------------|
| a yǐqián | i nánkàn |
| b dà | ii màn |
| c guì | iii róngyì |
| d hǎokàn | iv piányì |
| e kuài | v yǐhòu |
| f zǎo | vi xiǎo |
| g nán | vii wǎn |

Items of clothing

Item	Measure word	
chényī	(jiàn)	shirt
dàyī	(jiàn)	overcoat
jiǎkè	(jiàn)	jacket
kùzi	(tiáo)	trousers
nèikù	(tiáo)	underpants
qúnzi	(tiáo)	skirt
shuìyī	(jiàn)	nightdress, pyjamas
xié	(shuāng)	shoes (a pair of)
xīfú	(tào)	suit (Western)
yǔyī	(jiàn)	raincoat

- 2 Refer to the list of colours (Unit 7, p. 70) and items of clothing above. How would you ask for the following things in Chinese? (Note the measure words.)

Example: a green jacket yí jiàn lǜ jiākè

- a a white shirt
- b a yellow overcoat
- c a blue suit
- d a green skirt
- e a pair of black shoes
- f a pair of red trousers

- 3 Listen to the recording and answer the following questions. If you don't have the recording, read the passage below and then answer the questions.

- a Xiǎo Cài jīntiān chuān (wear) shénme?
- b Xiǎo Zhào jīntiān chuān shénme?
- c Lǎo Fāng jīntiān chuān shénme?

Materials

bù	cotton / cloth
bùxié	cloth shoes
pí	leather
píxié	leather shoes
sīchóu	silk
rénzào gé	imitation leather

Xiǎo Cài jīntiān chuān yí jiàn bái chèn yī, yì tiáo lán qún zǐ. Xiǎo Cài hěn xīhuan chuān píxié. Jīntiān tā chuān yì shuāng hóng píxié.

Xiǎo Zhào jīntiān chuān yí jiàn lán de sīchóu chèn yī, yì tiáo hēi kù zǐ. Xiǎo Zhào zuì bù xīhuan chuān píxié. Tā jīntiān chuān yì shuāng lǜ bùxié.

Lǎo Fāng jīntiān chuān yí tào hēi xīfú, yí jiàn bái chèn yī, yì shuāng hēi píxié. Xīngqī yì dào xīngqī wǔ tā dōu chuān xīfú hé píxié.

- 4 Describe what the following people are wearing with the information provided:

Example: Xiǎo Wáng / white shirt / black trousers / yellow shoes.

Answer: Xiǎo Wáng chuān yí jiàn bái chènshān, yì tiáo hēi kù zǐ, yì shuāng huáng píxié.

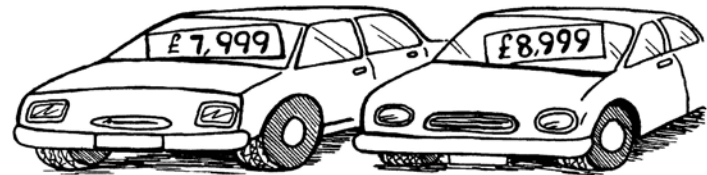
- a Lǎo Mǎ / black leather shoes / blue shirt.
- b Xiǎo Qián / red shirt / black trousers / cloth shoes.
- c Liú xiānsheng / grey (huī) suit / yellow shirt / brown (zōng) leather shoes.

- 5 How well do they do the following things? Answer each of the following questions using the information given in brackets.

Example: Xiǎo Zhū Fǎyǔ shuō-de zěnmeyàng? (not at all well)

Answer: Tā Fǎyǔ shuō-de bù zěnmeyàng.

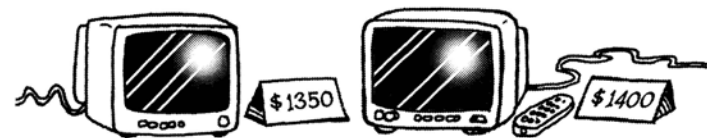
- a Lǐ xiānsheng Déwén (German) shuō-de zěnmeyàng? (very well)
 - b Zhāng tàitai jiàqī guò-de hǎo bu hǎo? (not very well)
 - c Cháo xiǎojie Yīngwén xué-de kuài bu kuài? (extremely quickly)
 - d Mǎlǐ yòng kuàizi (chopsticks) yòng-de zěnmeyàng? (not at all well)
 - e Hēnglǐ shuō Rìyǔ (Japanese) shuō-de hěn qīngchū (clearly) ma? (very clearly)
- 6 Look carefully at the pictures of Zhāng Tóng and Mǎ Fēng below and the sentences comparing their height, age and weight. Then make up similar sentences comparing their cars, TVs (diànshì) and handwriting (zì) using méi yǒu . . . and the adjectives given in brackets.



Zhāng Tóng's car (dà, guì)

Mǎ Fēng's car

Example: Mǎ Fēng de chē méi yǒu Zhāng Tóng de chē dà. Zhāng Tóng de chē méi yǒu Mǎ Fēng de chē guì.



Zhāng Tóng's TV

Mǎ Fēng's TV

- a diànshì (TV) (dà, guì)

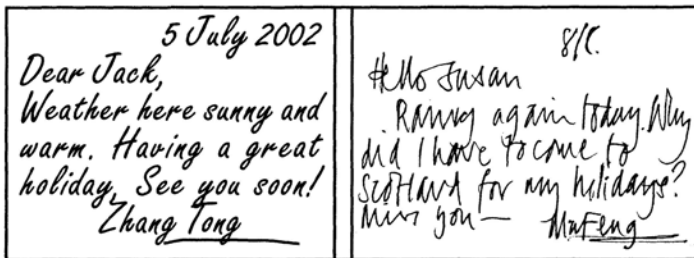


Zhāng Tóng



Mǎ Fēng

b (gāo, dà, zhòng)



c zì (handwriting) (qīngchū clear)

Quick review

What do you say?

- Say to someone that she speaks English very well.
- Say that something, e.g. a shirt, is a bit small.
- Ask someone how her holiday was.
- Say that England (Yīnggélán) is bigger than Ireland (Ài'ěr'lán).
- Say that Germany is not as big as France.



Bù gōngpíng Unfair

009

how do I get to . . . ?

qù . . . zěnmē zǒu?

In this unit you will learn

- how to ask for and understand directions
- how to use public transport
- how to ask people if they have ever done something
- how to express how long something happens for

Before you start

You will be able to say all sorts of things about where you are going, where you are coming from and by what means of transport, by the time you have worked your way through this unit. You will also be able to say which order you are going to do things in and whether you have ever done them before.

Let's try

- Refer back to **Dialogue 1** in Unit 8 and answer the following questions in Chinese:
 - How much was the pullover?
 - What could Colin have bought for the money instead?
- Somebody asks you whether French goods are more expensive than British ones. What do you reply?
 - The same person compliments you on your spoken Chinese. What is your response?

Key words and phrases

Àomén	Macao
bīān	side
xībiānr	west side
chēzhàn	bus / train stop or station
chuán	ship, boat
cóng	from
dǎsuàn	to plan
dīfang	place
dù jià	to take a holiday
duimiàn	opposite
-guo	have ever (verb suffix)
hái	still
háishi	would be better
huàn (chē)	to change (bus)
jià	holiday
jiù	emphatic
X lù (chē)	the number X bus
mǎlù	road
méi shénme	it's nothing, don't mention it

nàr/nài	there (used interchangeably)
qián	front, ahead
tiān	day
Tiāntán	Temple of Heaven
tīngshuō	I heard, I am told
tuìxiū	to retire
wǎng	in the direction of
wǎng nán kāi de chē	southbound bus
xià chē	to get off the bus
Xiānggǎng	Hong Kong
xiànmù	to envy
xíng	OK
yǐhòu	after
yòng	to need, to use
zěnme	how
zhōumò	weekend
cóng A dào B	from A to B
... jiù dào le.	It takes only... to get there.
Qù X zěnme zǒu?	How do (I) get to X?
xiān ... zài ...	first... then...

Learning tips

- z is pronounced like the -ds in *adds* or the z in *zoo*.
- c is not at all like the c in English so be very careful with it. It is pronounced like the -ts in *its*. It is useful to practise it together with z and to say them one after the other so that you can hear the difference clearly. Remember the top of your sheet of A4 (see Unit 6, p. 58) should be blown away from you when you say c but not when you say z.

Dialogues

Dialogue 1

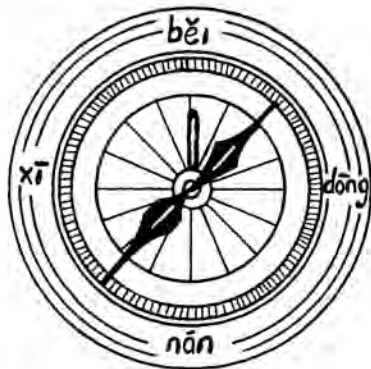
Xiǎo Féng and Lǎo Qiáo are talking about taking their holidays. Where is Xiǎo Féng going and how will she get to those places? What about Lǎo Qiáo? How long is his holiday?

- Qiáo** Tīngshuō nǐ kuài yào qù dù jià le.
Féng Duì. Wǒ yǒu sān ge xīngqī de jià, cóng liúyuè èrshíqī hào dào qīyuè shíbā hào.

- Qiáo** Nǐ dǎsuàn qù nǎr?
Féng Xiānggǎng hé Àomén. Zhèi liǎng ge dìfang wǒ dōu méi qù-guo.
- Qiáo** Nǐ zěnmé qù?
Féng Wǒ xiān zuò fēijī dào Xiānggǎng, zài nàr zhù wǔ tiān. Zài cóng Xiānggǎng zuò chuán dào Àomén.
- Qiáo** Wǒ zhēn xiànmu nǐ.
Féng Nǐ shénme shíhou dù jià?
Qiáo Wǒ? O, shí'èryuè.
Féng Duō cháng shíjiān?
Qiáo Bù zhīdao.
Féng Zěnmé huì bú zhīdao?
Qiáo Jīnnián shí'èryuè wǒ jiù yào tuìxiū le.
Féng Wǒ zhēn xiànmu nǐ.

i As China is situated in the East, the most important cardinal point is east rather than north. In the West we say *north, south, east, west* but the Chinese start with **dōng** (east) and say **dōng, nán** (south), **xī** (west), **běi** (north).

South-west in Chinese is **xīnán** (west, south), north-east is **dōngběi** (lit. east, north) and so on.

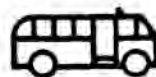


Dialogue 2

Ann is touring in Beijing. Today she is going to visit Tiantan. Can you follow the directions given to her by a passer-by?

- Ann** Qǐng wèn, qù Tiāntán zěnmé zǒu?
Passer-by Tiāntán zài xīnán biān. Zuò chē sì zhàn jiù dào le.

公共汽车站



Gōnggòng qìchēzhàn Bus stop

- Ann** Zuò jǐ lù chē?
Passer-by Nǐ xiān cóng zhè wǎng dōng zǒu, zài zuò wǎng nán kāi de chē, shíwǔ lù, èrshísān lù dōu xíng. Chēzhàn zài yínháng duimiān.
- Ann** Yǒng huàn chē ma?
Passer-by Bù yòng. Xià chē yǐhòu wǎng qián zǒu yìdiǎn. Tiāntán jiù zài mǎlù xībian.
- Ann** Xièxie nín.
Passer-by Méi shénme.

i When giving you directions, the Chinese (especially in the north) usually use the points of the compass rather than left and right. So it's good to know where north and south are when you ask somebody the way!

Dialogue 3

James is suggesting something adventurous to his friend, Huáng Zhi. What is his suggestion and does Huáng accept it?

- James** Nǐ qù-guo Tiānjīn ma?
Huáng Méi qù-guo.
James Xià ge zhōumò zánmen yìqǐ qù ba.
Huáng Hǎo'a. Nǐ dǎsuàn zěnmé qù? Zuò qìchē háishi zuò huǒchē?
James Zánmen qí chē qù zěnmeyàng?
Huáng Shénme? Nǐ fā fēng le! Qí chē qù Tiānjīn yào liǎng, sān tiān, yòu lèi yòu wēixiǎn.
James Wǒ bú pà lèi, yě xīhuan màoxiǎn!
Huáng Fǎnzheng wǒ bù gēn nǐ yìqǐ qù. Wǒ zài jiā kàn diànsì, yòu shūfu yòu ānquán.

ānquán	safe
diànshì	TV
fā fēng	mad
fǎnzheng	no way, in any case
gēn	with
jiā	home
lèi	tired, tiring
màoxiǎn	adventurous, to take the risk
pà	afraid
qí	to ride (bicycle, motorbike, horse)
qìchē	vehicle, bus, car
shūfu	comfortable
wēixiǎn	dangerous
xià ge	next
yào ...	it takes ...
yìqǐ	together
yòu ... yòu ...	both ... and ...
zìxíngchē	bicycle

Language notes

1 About to

To say something is about to happen or is going to happen soon use:

yào (*want, will*) + verb ... le

Nǐ yào qù dù jià le. *You're going on holiday soon.*
Wǒ yào qù Xiānggǎng le. *I'm about to leave for Hong Kong.*

Kuài (*quick*) or jiù (*then*) can also be put in front of yào to make the imminence of the action even clearer:

Jīnnián shí'èr yuè wǒ *I'll be retiring in December.*
jiù yào tuìxiū le.

Tā kuài yào kàn diànshì le. *He's about to watch TV.*

2 From ... to ...

Simply use cóng (*from*) and dào (*to*).

cóng Xiānggǎng dào Àomén *from Hong Kong to Macao*
cóng Běijīng dào Tiānjīn *from Beijing to Tianjin*

And from one time to another:

cóng sānyuè shíbā hào dào *from 18 March to 9 April*
siyuè jiǔ hào

There are only two small points to remember.

- The word order cannot be reversed in Chinese. You cannot say *I am going to (dào) China from (cóng) Japan*. So cóng must always precede dào.
- In the sentence, *I am going to (dào) Macao from (cóng) Hong Kong by (zuò) boat*, 'from Hong Kong' must come first followed by the means of transport 'by boat' and then 'to Macao' last:

Wǒ cóng Xiānggǎng zuò chuán dào Àomén.

The Chinese are very logical – you cannot get to Macao unless you 'sit on the boat' zuò chuán first so that should come before 'to Macao' dào Àomén.

3 Have you ever ... ?

If you put the little word guo after the verb it will emphasize a past experience:

Wǒ qù-guo Yídàlì. *I've been to Italy*
(at some time or other).
Tā chī-guo Yìndù fàn. *He has eaten Indian food*
(at some time in the past).

You make the negative by putting méi yǒu in front of the verb:

Wǒ méi (yǒu) qù-guo *I have never been to China.*
Zhōngguó.

You make the question by putting ma or méi you at the end of the statement:

Nǐ qù-guo Tiānjīn ma? *Have you (ever) been to Tianjin?*
Nǐ zuò-guo fēijī méi you? *Have you (ever) travelled by plane?*
Hái méi yǒu (qù-guo). *Not yet.*
Méi zuò-guo. *No, never.*

Note the two possible ways of answering a question with -guo.

4 First ... then ...

By using *xiān* (*first*) + verb followed by *zài* (*then*) + verb you show that the two actions are linked:

Wǒ xiān zuò fēijī dào Xiānggǎng, zài zuò huǒchē qù Běijīng.	First I'll go Hong Kong by plane then I'll go by train to Beijing.
Nǐ xiān cóng zhè wǎng dōng zǒu, zài zuò wǎng nán kāi de chē.	You walk eastwards from here first. Then you get on a bus going south (lit. then sit towards south drive on bus).

The *xiān* + verb and the *zài* + verb may occur in two separate sentences but the idea of sequence of actions is still there:

(Wǒ) xiān zuò fēijī dào Xiānggǎng... Zài cóng Xiānggǎng zuò chuán dào Àomén.	First I'll go to Hong Kong by plane... Then from Hong Kong I'll go to Macao by boat.
---	---

By the way, this *zài* is written like the *zài* in *zài jiàn* not as in *zài* (*at, in*).

5 How long?

As you saw in Unit 1, time-words like *today, Wednesday, 6 o'clock* come before the verb in Chinese. However, when you want to say how long you do the action of the verb, the time-word comes after the verb:

Wǒ zài nàr zhù wǔ tiān.	I'll stay there five days.
Tā zài zhèr gōngzuò le liǎng nián.	She worked here for two years.

The *le* after the verb shows that the action of the verb has been completed.

6 Huì Can

You met *huì* (*can*) in Unit 6, p. 63 with the meaning *to know how to do something* (having learnt to do it). Its other meaning is *to be likely to or to be possible*:

Tā xiàwǔ huì lái.	He'll (is likely to) come in the afternoon.
Zěnmé huì bù zhīdao?	How could (you) not know? (lit. how possible not know?)

7 Both ... and ...

To express *both ... and ...* you put *yòu* in front of the two adjectives or verbs:

you lèi yòu wēixiǎn	both tiring and dangerous
you shūfu yòu ānquán	both comfortable and safe
you hǎo yòu bú guì	both good and inexpensive

8 Added 'r'

You will find *r* added to some words in this unit in order for you to get used to seeing and reading it. It is used a great deal by people in the north of China especially around Beijing. You certainly don't have to use it but it is important to know that it exists. It is to be found on the ends of words such as:

(yì) diǎn	(yì)diǎnr	a little bit
yí wǎn	yì wǎnr	one bowl
tiān	tiānr	day
duìmiàn	duìmiànr	opposite
biān	biānr	side
xībian	xībianr	west side
wán (verb)	wánr	to enjoy oneself

Learning tips

Learn from your mistakes and keep trying

- 1 Everyone makes mistakes when learning a language. If you didn't make mistakes, you wouldn't have to learn it! Small children also make mistakes when learning their own language so accept that this is perfectly normal and natural.
- 2 Some mistakes affect the meaning of what you say more than others. For instance, it is important not to confuse *mǎi* (3rd tone) (*to buy*) with *mài* (4th tone) (*to sell*) for obvious reasons. But surprisingly enough, poor tones don't seem to affect the ability of most Chinese people to understand what you are saying. There is also a wide variety of pronunciation across the whole of China because it is so vast.

So concentrate on getting your message across rather than on not making any mistakes. Learning to speak a foreign language

is one case where quantity (as long as it is comprehensible) is better than quality! That is the way you will learn.

Nevertheless when a standard speaker of Chinese corrects your Chinese, make a mental note of it and at the first opportunity write it down, learn it and try to use it.

- 3 It is good to deliberately try out new constructions and vocabulary. Practise them beforehand so that you won't be too hesitant the first time you try something. If it doesn't work as well as you'd hoped, look at them again and have another go. It's like learning to ride a bicycle. When you fall off you have to get on again straight away so that you don't lose confidence.

i It is still sometimes very difficult to buy return tickets in China especially for trains and long-distance buses. Normally you have to think when you are going to leave a place as soon as you have arrived in it and organize your return (or ongoing) ticket accordingly. China's large population makes queuing inevitable unless you book your ticket through an agency (hotel, China Travel Service and so on) which may require plenty of notice and a commission charge.

Practice

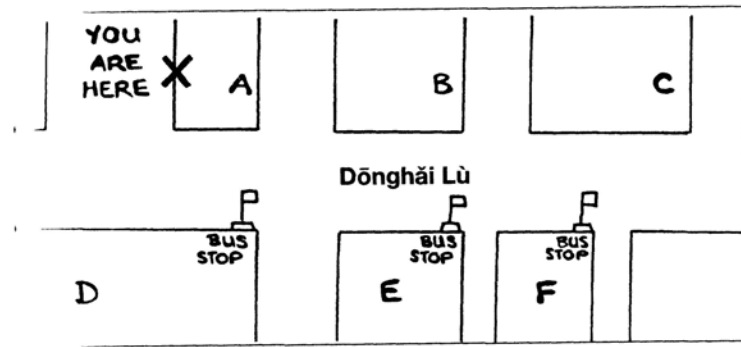
- 1 Answer the following *Have you ever...* questions:

Example: Nǐ qù-guo Zhōngguó ma?
Qù-guo or Méi qù-guo.

- a Nǐ qù-guo Riběn ma? [ever been to Japan?]
b Nǐ zuò-guo fēijī ma? [ever travelled by plane?]
c Nǐ kàn-guo Déguó diànyǐng ma? [ever seen German films?]
d Nǐ chī-guo Zhōngguó fàn ma? [ever had Chinese food?]
e Nǐ hē-guo Měiguó pútáojiǔ ma? [ever drunk American wine?]

- 2** Listen to the recording (or read the following passage) and draw the way to the cinema (diànyǐngyuàn) on the plan overleaf. Which letter represents the cinema?

Xiān wǎng nán zǒu. Dào Dōnghǎi Lù zuò wǎng dōng kāi de chē. Zuò liǎng zhàn. Diànyǐngyuàn jiù zài Dōnghǎi Lù de nánbian, shāngdiàn de duìmiàn.



- 1 You are now in the cinema. You have just seen a film. Can you say in Chinese how you get back to the hotel you are staying in (A)?
- 4 Read the directions below which tell you where various places are situated. Then go back to the sketch and identify the buildings represented by the letters (B), (C), (D) and (E).
- a Zhōngguó Yínháng zài diànyǐngyuàn de xībian.
b Shāngdiàn zài diànyǐngyuàn de duìmiàn.
c Dōnghǎi Gōngyuán zài Zhōngguó Yínháng de xībian.
d Xuéxiào (school) zài Zhōngguó Yínháng de běibian, fāndiàn de dōngbian.
- 5 Answer the following questions using (cóng)... dào.... If you don't know, say **Wǒ bù zhīdao**. (But you could find out.)
- Example:* When is Mr Wang's next holiday?
(Cóng) wǔyuè sānshí hào dào liùyuè bā hào.
- a When is **your** next holiday?
b What are the opening hours of **your** local (or school) library during the weekdays and weekends?
c Which days of the week do **you** work? (e.g. from Monday to Friday)
d What are **your** working hours during the week?
- 6 How do you get there?
(Choose an appropriate means of transport from the list overleaf to make complete sentences in Chinese according to the information given in a-e. Take care with the word order!

zuò gōnggòng qìchē	by bus
zuò huǒchē	by train
zuò dìtiě	by underground
zuò fēijī	by plane
zuò chuán	by ship
qí (zìxíng)chē	to cycle
kāi chē	to drive
zǒu lù	to walk

Example: to go to work (qù shàng bān)
Wǒ qí zìxíngchē qù shàng bān.

- a to go to work [qù shàng bān]
b to go to school [qù xuéxiào]
c to do shopping [qù mǎi dōngxì]
d to go to see a film [qù kàn diànyǐng]
(at your local cinema)
e to go to X train station [qù X huǒchē zhàn]
- 7 In the box below you will find some useful words to describe things. Which pair would you use to describe the following things? Try to use yòu ... yòu ...

Example: Zuò fēijī yòu guì yòu bù shūfu.
Zuò fēijī yòu kuài yòu shūfu.

guì	expensive	bú guì	not expensive
piányi	cheap	bù piányi	not cheap
fāngbiàn	convenient	máfan	troublesome
kuài	fast	mǎn	slow
wēixiǎn	dangerous	ānquán	safe

- a Cóng Rìběn zuò chuán dào Zhōngguó
b Zài Lúndūn/Bǎlǐ (Paris) qí zìxíngchē
c Zuò gōnggòng qìchē qù shàng bān
d Cóng Yīngguó zuò fēijī dào Měiguó
e Kāi chē qù mǎi dōngxì
- 8 Listen to the recording and answer the following questions about Mr White's holiday.

See first if you can answer the questions in Chinese. If you find them too difficult, read the questions in English below and answer them either in English or in Chinese.

If you haven't got the recording, read the passage after the questions and then answer the questions. If you need to refer to it, the English script is in the **Key to the exercises**.

- a Bái xiānsheng dǎsuàn qù shénme dìfang?
b Tā zài Bǎlǐ zhù jǐ tiān?
c Tā gēn shéi yìqǐ qù Yìdàlì? Tāmen zěnmē qù Yìdàlì?
d Bái xiānsheng dǎsuàn zài Yìdàlì zhù jǐ tiān?
e Tā zěnmē huí Yīngguó?
f Tā péngyou zěnmē huí Fǎguó?
- a Where did Mr White plan to go?
b How long does he plan to stay in Paris?
c Who will he go to Italy with? How will they travel to Italy?
d How long does Mr White plan to stay in Italy?
e How will he get back to the UK?
f How will his friend get back to France?

Bái xiānsheng de jiàqī Mr White's holidays

Bái xiānsheng yào qù dù jià le. Tā yào qù liǎng ge dìfang. Tā xiān cóng Lúndūn zuò huǒchē dào Bǎlǐ. Tā dǎsuàn zài Bǎlǐ zhù wǔ tiān. Ránhòu tā gēn tāde Fǎguó péngyou kāi chē qù Yìdàlì. Tāmen dǎsuàn zài Yìdàlì zhù yí ge xīngqī. Zuihòu tā cóng Yìdàlì zuò fēijī huí Lúndūn. Tāde péngyou kāi chē huí Fǎguó.

Quick review

- a Ask how to get to the Bank of China (Zhōngguó Yínháng).
b Tell the Chinese person who has asked you the way to take the number 10 bus.
c Then tell her that it will be five stops (before she gets there).
d Say that your friend has never been to China.
e Say it's going to rain soon.



Jìnzhǐ xī yān
禁止吸烟

10

nín xiǎng chī shénme? what would you like to eat?

In this unit you will learn

- how to order a meal and drinks
- how to pay the bill
- how to say you have given up something (such as smoking)
- more about verb endings

Before you start

By the end of this unit you will be able to get yourself various things to eat and drink and even to question the bill! There's lots of very useful vocabulary so take your time.

Let's try

- You need to tell a Chinese friend your itinerary once you have left home so she can book your hotel in Beijing and arrange your programme.
 - Tell her that you are going by air to Hong Kong first and staying there two days.
 - Then you are going from Hong Kong to Shanghai by train.
 - You plan to travel by air to Beijing on the morning of 10th August.
- The same friend asks if you have ever been to Shanghai before. What does she say to you?

Key words and phrases

àiren	husband / wife (sometimes used in the People's Republic)
bēi	a cup of; cup
bié	don't
bīngqǐlín	ice-cream
cài	dish
càidān	menu (lit. dish list)
Chángchéng	the Great Wall
chī	to eat
chī-wán/chī-bǎo/chī-hǎo le	to have finished eating / be full / satisfied
chī sù	to be vegetarian (lit. eat non-meat food)
chōu (yān)	to smoke (a cigarette)
dòufu	bean curd
duì	to, for
duō	more; many
gēn wǒ lái	follow me
hǎochī	delicious, tasty
hē	to drink

jiè (yān)	to give up (smoking)
jié zhàng	to ask for the bill
júzhī	orange juice
là (de)	hot, spicy (food)
lái	I'll have (colloquial)
mápó dòufu	spicy beancurd / tofu
pàng	fat
pútáojiǔ	wine (lit. grape alcohol)
qīngcài	vegetables
ràng	to let, allow
rè	hot
ròu	meat
shǎo	less; few
shēntǐ	health
shōu	to accept, to receive
tāng	soup
suānlà tāng	hot and sour soup
tiānqi	weather
xiànjīn	cash
xìnyòng kǎ	credit card
yú	fish
yùdìng	to book (a room)
zhī	(measure word for cigarettes)
zhǐ	only
zhīpiào	cheque / check
Nǐmen chī/hē diǎnr shénme?	What would you like to eat / drink?
Jiǔ lái le	Here comes the wine

Learning tips

- 1 Practise the difference between **-uo** and **-ou** as in **duō** (*much/many*) and **dōu** (*both/all*).
- 2 Practise the difference between **-an** and **-ang** as in **fàn** (*food*) and **fàng** (*to put*) and between **-en**, **-eng** as in **fēn** (*minute/smallest unit of Chinese currency*) and **fēng** (*wind*).
- 3 Now go back and revise all the vowels with a nasal sound in the **Pronunciation guide**, p. xv. Listen to the recording if you have it.

Hold your nose gently as you practise these sounds. You should be able to feel the vibration in it when you say **-ang**, **-eng**, **-iang**, **-ing**, **-iong**, **-ong** and **-uang**. This is particularly obvious when you say the sound in the 1st tone and hang on to it.

Dialogues

四川餐厅

Sīchuān cāntīng
Sichuan restaurant

Dialogue 1

Mr Brown and his friend Yúqiáo are going to have a Chinese meal. What drinks and food have they ordered?

- Waiter** Nǐmen yùdìng le ma?
Brown Yùdìng le. Wǒ jiào John Brown.
Waiter Wǒ kànyikàn. . . . Mr Brown, qǐ diǎn bàn, liǎng ge rén.
Brown Dui, dui.
Waiter Hǎo, qǐng gēn wǒ lái.
Waiter Zhè shì càidān. Nǐmen xiān hē diǎnr shénme?
Yúqiáo Wǒ yào yì bēi júzhī.
Brown Nǐmen yǒu shénme pútáojiǔ?
Waiter Wǒmen yǒu Chángchéng bái pútáojiǔ hé Zhōngguó hóng pútáojiǔ.
Brown Lái yì bēi bái pútáojiǔ ba.
Waiter Jiǔ lái le. Nǐmen yào shénme cài?
Yúqiáo Wǒ bù chī ròu.
Brown Nǐ chī bu chī yú?
Yúqiáo Bù chī. Wǒ zhǐ yào qīngcài hé dòufu.
Brown Shénme? Nǐ xiànzài chī sù le.
Yúqiáo Shì'a. Wǒ yǐjīng hěn pàng le.
Waiter Nǐmen xǐhuan chī là de ma?
Yúqiáo Xǐhuan. Kěshì bié tài là le.
Waiter Lái yì ge mápó dòufu ba.
Brown Hǎo'a. Xiān lái liǎng ge suānlà tāng.
Yúqiáo Jīntiān tiānqi yǐjīng hěn rè le. Wǒmen yīnggāi shǎo chī là de.
Waiter Méi guānxi. Chī-wán fàn yǐhòu, nǐmen duō chī diǎnr bīngqílín. Wǒmen de bīngqílín féicháng hǎochī.

i The custom when eating Chinese food is that all the dishes are put in the middle of the table and shared. The host helps her/his guest to the best titbits. Too bad if you don't share his/her taste! The soup is always eaten last in China except for some areas in the south.

▶ Dialogue 2

Mr Brown and Yúqiáo are chatting over the meal. Listen to or read their conversation and find out why Yúqiáo has given up smoking and Mr Brown hasn't.

- Brown** Chōu zhī yān ba.
Yúqiáo Wǒ bù chōu yān le.
Brown Wèishénme?
Yúqiáo Wǒ àiren bú ràng wǒ chōu le. Tā shuō chōu yān duì wǒde shēntǐ bù hǎo, duì tāde shēntǐ yě bù hǎo.
Brown Wǒ yě bù xiǎng chōu le. Kěshì wǒ yǒu yí ge péngyou, jiè yān yíqián bú pàng, jiè yān yìhòu jiù pàng le. Wǒ pà pàng.
Yúqiáo Wǒ yě pà pàng, kěshì jīntiān de cài tài hǎochī le.
Brown Nǐ chī-bǎo le ma?
Yúqiáo Chī-bǎo le.
Brown Wǒmen jié zhàng ba. Fúwúyuán, qīng jié zhàng.
Waiter Nǐmen chī-hǎo le ma?
Yúqiáo Chī-hǎo le, xièxie.
Brown Nǐmen shōu bu shōu xinyòng kǎ hé zhīpiào?
Waiter Duibuqǐ, wǒmen zhǐ shōu xiànjīn.

▶ Dialogue 3

Ann and Xiǎo Fāng have arrived at the street market (see Dialogue 3, Unit 7). What are they going to do next? Are they going to get a bargain this time?

- Ann** Wǒ è le. Wǒmen **suǐbiàn** chī diǎnr ba.
Fāng Nàr yǒu ge xiǎo **tānzi**. Tāmen de **chǎomiàn** hǎochī-jīle.
(At the food stall)
Ann *(whispering)* Wǒ kàn zhèr bú tài **gānjìng**.
Fāng Méi guānxi, tāmen huì gěi wǒmen **wèishēng kuàizi**.
Fāng Qīng lái liǎng **wǎnr** chǎomiàn, liǎng **tīng** kěkǒukèlè.

* * *

Waitress Qǐng xiān **fù qián**. Liǎng **wǎnr** chǎomiàn shì'èr kuài, liǎng **tīng** kěkǒukèlè shíshí kuài, **yígòng** èrshíliù kuài.
Fāng Shénme? Nǐ **suàn-cuò** le ba. **Shàng cì** chǎomiàn wǒ kuài yì wǎnr.
Waitress Méi suàn-cuò. Shàng cì shì shàng cì, xiànzài yì wǎnr liú kuài le.

Words in **bold** are listed overleaf.

è	hungry
chǎomiàn	fried noodles
fù qián	to pay (money)
gānjìng	clean
-jīle	(suffix) extremely
kěkǒukèlè	Coca-Cola
kuàizi	chopsticks
shàng cì	last time
suàn-cuò le	to have calculated wrongly
suǐbiàn	casually
tānzi	stall
tīng	(measure word for cans (of drink))
wǎn(r)	bowl
wèishēng	hygiene, hygienic
yígòng	altogether

i When eating from street stalls or fast-food outlets make sure you ask for **wèishēng kuàizi** (*hygienic*, i.e. disposable, *chopsticks*) which should, of course, come wrapped. You have to break them apart which shows you that they are still unused. Or carry your own with you, plus tissues to wipe your bowl or plate.

Language notes

1 Already and le

Remember using *le* in Unit 4 to show that something has happened or has already taken place? When **yǐjīng** (*already*) appears in front of a verb it reinforces this idea of something having happened so you will find *le* at the end of such sentences:

Wǒ **yǐjīng** hěn pàng le. *I'm already very fat.*
 Jintīan **yǐjīng** hěn rè le. *It's already very hot today.*

2 More before the verb!

To say *eat more*, put the little word **duō** (*much/many*) in front of the verb *to eat*:

duō chī *eat more*

This works with all full verbs, i.e. verbs that cannot also act as adjectives such as **hǎo** (*good*), **pàng** (*fat*) and so on.

duō hē	<i>drink more</i>
duō yào	<i>want more</i>
duō gěi	<i>give more</i>

You do exactly the same thing if you want to say *eat less, drink less*, and so on but you put **shǎo** (*less/few*) in front of the verb instead of **duō**:

shǎo chī	<i>eat less</i>
shǎo hē	<i>drink less</i>
shǎo yào	<i>want less</i>
shǎo gěi	<i>give less</i>

3 Not any more!

To say that you don't do something any more use:

bù verb (+ object) le

Wǒ bù chōu yān le.	<i>I don't smoke any more/ I've given up smoking.</i>
Wǒ tàitai bú ràng wǒ chōu le.	<i>My wife doesn't let me smoke any more.</i>
Tā bù hē jiǔ le.	<i>She's given up drinking.</i>
Tāmen bù niánqīng le.	<i>They're no longer young.</i>

If the verb is **yǒu** (*to have*), you have to use **méi** instead of **bù**:

You	Nǐ yǒu mei yǒu hóng chènshān? <i>Do you have a red shirt?</i>
Shop assistant	Méi yǒu le, mài-wán le. <i>We're out of stock. They're sold out.</i> (<i>lit.</i> not have any more, sell finish le).

4 Smoking is not good for your health!

As you know, **duì** means *right, correct*. In certain contexts it also means *to* or *for*. Learn the following useful phrases:

A duì shēntǐ (bù) hǎo.	<i>A is (not) good for the health/body.</i>
Y duì X (bù) hǎo.	<i>Y is (not) good to X.</i>

Thus **Chōu yān duì wǒde shēntǐ bù hǎo** means *Smoking is not good for my health*.

5 After ...

In English you say *after I've been to the restaurant* but in Chinese you say *I've been to the restaurant after* – the reverse of the English word order:

He yān yǐhòu	<i>After giving up smoking</i>
Chī fàn yǐhòu	<i>After eating</i>

The same happens with **yǐqián** (*before*) and **de shíhou** (*when*). You will meet **de shíhou** later in Units 12–21):

He yān yǐqián	<i>Before giving up smoking</i>
Fu qián yiqian	<i>Before paying</i>
He zhāng de shíhou	<i>When working out the bill</i>

6 To eat your fill

To say that you *have eaten your fill* in Chinese you put **bǎo** (*full*) after the verb **chī** (*to eat*):

Wǒ chī-bǎo le. *I'm full (lit. I eat full le).*

The **le** after the verb shows completed action. (See Unit 4, p. 36.)

To make the verb negative, use **méi** not **bù** and drop the **le** as the verb is then no longer completed.

Other little words, or endings, which appear after the verb in this way have other meanings:

Nǐmen chī-hǎo le ma?	<i>Have you finished eating (to your satisfaction)?</i>
Chī-hǎo le.	<i>Yes, we have (finished eating to our satisfaction).</i>
Nǐ suàn-cuò le ba.	<i>You must have got it wrong (lit. you calculate wrong le, haven't you).</i>
Méi suàn-cuò.	<i>No, I haven't (lit. not have calculate wrong).</i>
Nǐmen hē-wán le ma?	<i>Have you finished your drinks (lit. you drink finish le ma)?</i>
Wǒmen hē-wán le.	<i>Yes, we have (lit. we drink finish le).</i>
Nǐ kàn-jiàn tā le ma?	<i>Did you see him/her (lit. you look perceive him/her le ma)?</i>
Wǒ méi kàn-jiàn tā.	<i>I didn't see him/her (lit. I not have look perceive him/her).</i>

If you put **bù** between the verb and **one** of these endings as in the examples below, you have the meaning of **cannot + verb + ending**:

Wǒ kàn-**bu**-jiàn. *I can't see.*
Tā tīng-**bu**-dǒng. *She can't understand.*
(lit. she listen cannot understand).
Wǒmen hē-**bu**-wán. *We can't finish (our drinks).*

If on the other hand you put **de** (yes, **de** again!) between the verb and one of these endings, you have the meaning of **can + verb + ending**:

Wǒ kàn-**de**-jiàn. *I can see.*
Tāmen tīng-**de**-dǒng. *They can understand.*
(lit. they listen can understand)
Wǒmen hē-**de**-wán. *We can drink up.*

This is the same **de** as the one used in Unit 8, pp. 87–8.

7 Tins, bowls and bottles

You should be familiar with measure words by now but did you spot the ones for *bottle*, *bowl* and *tin* in this unit?

yì píng Fǎguó jiǔ *a bottle of French wine*
liǎng wǎn(r) chǎomiàn *two bowls of fried noodles*
liǎng tīng kě(kǒukě)lè *two tins of Coke*

8 Don't ...!

To tell somebody not to do something, all you have to do is put the word **bié** (*don't*) in front of what you don't want them to do:

Bié shuō huà. *Don't speak.*
Bié zǒu. *Don't go.*

Adding **le** at the end of such sentences helps to soften the idea of giving an order or command.

Learning tips

Do you feel comfortable with the grammar?

Having now got to the halfway mark in the book it is probably a good idea to see how well you're doing with grammar and how to revise and consolidate what you know.

- Units 1 to 10 contain all the grammar you will need to know to study Units 12 to 21 so it is important that you feel comfortable with it before proceeding. Go back to the **Practice** sections of Units 1 to 10 and pick out one or two exercises from each unit and do them again. If you find any particular exercise difficult, revise the relevant **Language notes** carefully and try the exercise again.
- By the time you have completed **Language tip 1** you should be feeling more confident. When you go on to study Units 12 to 21 look at the structures in the dialogues and fit them into the patterns you have already learnt. You might like to jot these down so that you have a list of examples under each structure. You will find this helps the consolidation process.

Practice

- 1** Listen to the dialogue and tick on the menu what Mr Jones has ordered for his meal. You will need to know the word for *beer*, which is **píjiǔ** in Chinese.

Fúwùyuán Nín xiǎng chī diǎnr shénme?

Jones Wǒ xǐhuan chī là de.

Fúwùyuán Wǒmen yǒu yúxiāng

ròusī hé mápó dòufu.

Jones Wǒ yào yí ge yúxiāng

ròusī ba.

Fúwùyuán Nín yào tāng ma?

Jones Nǐmen yǒu shénme

tāng?

Fúwùyuán Suānlà tāng hé

zhàcài tāng.

Jones Lái yí ge suānlà

tāng ba.

Fúwùyuán Yào jiǔ ma?

Jones Yào yí píng píjiǔ.

Fúwùyuán Wúxīng píjiǔ háishi Qīngdāo píjiǔ?

Jones Lái yí píng Wúxīng píjiǔ.

Fúwùyuán Hǎo de.

- 2** How many? Put the correct number and measure word under each of the items in the pictures below. You may not be able to use all of these measure words: **píng**, **gè**, **bēi**, **zhāng**, **wǎn**, **jiàn**, **tīng**, **zhī**.

Example: yì běn shū (*a book*)



<p>Càidān</p> <p>mápó dòufu</p> <p>yúxiāng ròusī</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>suānlà tāng</p> <p>zhàcài tāng</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>Wúxīng píjiǔ</p> <p>Qīngdāo píjiǔ</p>
--



- 3 Have things changed?
If something has changed, you use . . . le.
If it has not changed, you say *méi yǒu*, or *gēn yǐqián yíyàng* (the same as before).

Example: Dōngxi guì le ma?
Guì le (yidiǎnr).
Méi yǒu or Gēn yǐqián yíyàng.

- a Dōngxi guì le ma? (compared with five years ago)
b Nǐ pàng le ma? (compared with five years ago)
c Tiānqi lěng le ma? (compared with a month ago)
d Nǐ zhǎng (to grow) gāo le ma? (compared with five years ago)
- 4 The following dialogue is between you and a waitress.
Complete your part.

- a **You** (Waiter! The bill please.)
Fúwùyuán Nǐmen chī-hǎo le ma?
b **You** (Yes. Thank you.)
Fúwùyuán Yígòng sānbǎi kuài.
c **You** (I think you've got it wrong.)
Fúwùyuán Wǒ zài kànkàn (let me look at it again).
Dui buqǐ. Wǒ suàn-cuò le.
d **You** (That's all right.)

- 5 Which is correct, *méi* or *bù*, in the following sentences?

- a Tā yíqián chōu yān, xiànzài *méi/bù* chōu yān le.
b Wó liùyuè qù dù jià le, xiànzài *méi/bù* yǒu jià le.
c Yíqián wǒ yǒu yì tiáo gǒu (dog), xiànzài *méi/bù* yǒu le.
d Tiānqi tài rè le, wǒ *méi/bù* chī là de le.

Halfway review

- ▶ 1 On the recording, you will hear different years being said.

Example: yī-jiǔ-jiǔ-qī nián 1997

Repeat each one and write them down.

- 2 You have learned two ways of asking *yes* or *no* questions.
Can you try to turn the following statements into questions using both ways?

Example: Statement – Jīntiān tiānqi hěn hǎo.
Question 1 – Jīntiān tiānqi hǎo ma?
Question 2 – Jīntiān tiānqi hǎo bu hǎo?

- a Tāmen shì jiěmèi.
b Tāde chǎomiàn zhēn hǎochī.
c Míngtiān tā tàitai qù mǎi dōngxi.
d Nǐ bú rènshi tā.
e Xiǎo Lǐ yǒu yì tiáo hóng kùzi.

- 3 Which of the following statements talk about habitual things one does or does not do (call these X), and which state things one has done at some point or has never done (call these Y)?

- a Xiǎo Fāng chōu-guo yān.
b Tā měi tiān chōu yān.
c Tā méi chī-guo Yìdàlì fàn.
d Tā bù xǐhuan chī Yìdàlì fàn.

- 4 Pair up the question words in Chinese with their English equivalents.

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| a shéi | i where |
| b nǎr | ii what |
| c shénme | iii which |
| d zěnmé | iv how many |
| e nǎ | v who |
| f jǐ | vi how |

5 Can you answer the following questions about Jane?

JANE

Jane went to the USA in 1985. She studied German for one year in 1990 and visited France in 1992. In 1993, she had Vietnamese food for the first time, and she stopped smoking in 1994. She will visit China and Japan for the first time next year.

- a Tā qù-guo Zhōngguó ma?
- b Tā 1985 qù nǎr le?
- c Tā huì shuō Déyǔ ma?
- d Tā qù-guo Fǎguó ma?
- e Tā xiànzài hái chōu yān ma?
- f Tā chī-guo Yuènnán fàn ma?
- g Tā míngnián qù nǎr?



(tíng)
No stopping



Jìnzhǐ tíng chē
No parking (*lit.* forbid stop vehicle)

Good luck with the rest of the book!



let's look at Chinese characters!
**wǒmèn kànkān
Hànzì bā!**

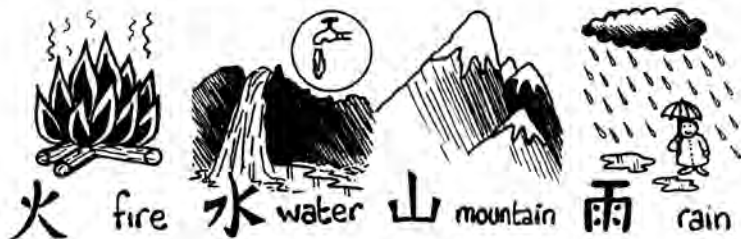
- In this unit you will be introduced to the Chinese writing system and learn
- the structure of Chinese characters
 - the rules of writing
 - how to write the numbers 1–99
 - how to write the days of the week and the date
 - how to write the time

Before you start

You will remember from the introduction that this unit is largely independent of the rest of the book, so if you have decided not to get involved with the Chinese script, you can miss it out. Alternatively, you can choose to come back to it later when you have finished the other units. Even if you don't do any of the exercises in this unit it would be a good idea to read it through, so that at least you have some idea what the Chinese script is all about. This will help your understanding of the Chinese language as a whole and hence of the people who speak it.

The Chinese writing system

Chinese characters (*Hànzì*) are the symbols used to write the Chinese language. Written Chinese does not use a phonetic alphabet. This means that you cannot guess how a character (*zì*) is pronounced just by looking at it. The Chinese script is very, very old. Its earliest written records date back over 3,500 years. These are the markings on oracle bones (tortoise shells and animal bones) on which the priests used to scratch their questions to the gods. The earliest characters were pictures representing easily recognizable objects, such as the sun, the moon, fire, water, a mountain, a tree, and so on.



Such characters (*zì*) were known as *pictographs*. Some of them are still in use even today.

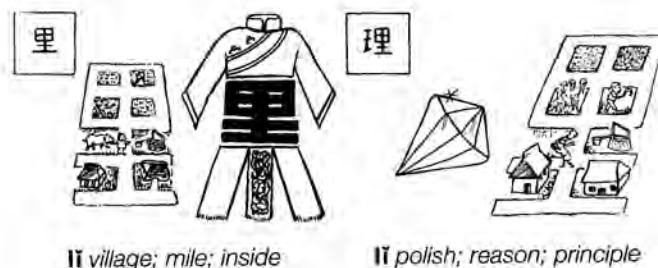
The next step was for *pictographs* to be combined to form new characters known as *ideographs* because they express an idea:

日 sun + 月 moon = 明 bright
 女 woman + 子 child = 好 good
 日 sun + 木 tree = 東 east (the sun coming up behind a tree)
 人 person + 木 tree = 休 to rest (a person leaning up against a tree)

So far so good! Unfortunately only a limited number of ideas could be expressed in this way so then characters were created which contained a *meaning* element (often known as the *radical*) and a *phonetic* element which was to help with the pronunciation of the character. Of course, pronunciation has changed over the centuries, so that now this phonetic element is only of limited help. Let's look at a few of these *radical-phonetic* or compound characters. You can see how such characters came into being and what they look like today.



Both the characters above are pronounced the same, although they have different tones. This is quite normal. The next pair have the same pronunciation and the same tone, but this is unusual.



At the opposite end of the spectrum we have the following three characters, which have a common phonetic element 母 *mu*, but are pronounced quite differently. This is the worst scenario!

母 每 海

mǔ mother

měi every

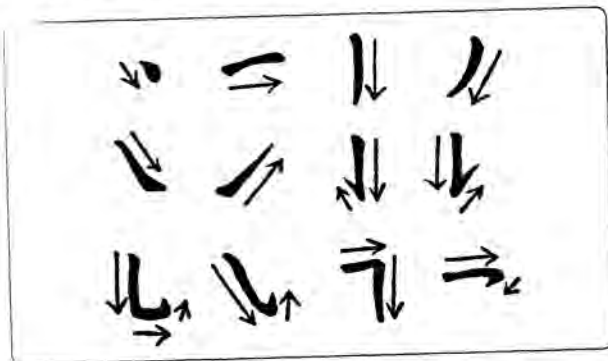
hǎi sea

The basic rules for writing Chinese characters

As you can imagine, there are some basic rules for writing Chinese characters which you need to master. This is important if you are to remember them, and so the brain needs to operate a kind of orderly filing system. To do this, it needs help. Chinese characters should always be written the same way, so that they become fixed in your imaginary filing system. Most characters are made up of two or more basic structural parts called 'character components', although of course some character components such as 日 *rì* (*sun*) can stand by themselves, as we have mentioned earlier. Although the total number of characters is quite large, the number of character components is limited. These components are written with a number of basic strokes, which are illustrated below:

Stroke	Name
丶	diǎn <i>dot</i>
一	héng <i>horizontal</i>
丨	shù <i>vertical</i>
丿	piě <i>left-falling</i>
㇇	nà <i>right-falling</i>
㇇	tí <i>rising</i>
㇇	gōu <i>hook</i>
㇇	zhé <i>turning</i>

These strokes are basically straight lines and were traditionally written in ink with a hair brush. The main directions are from top to bottom and from left to right. The arrows on the basic strokes overleaf show how the characters are written by indicating the direction each stroke takes:

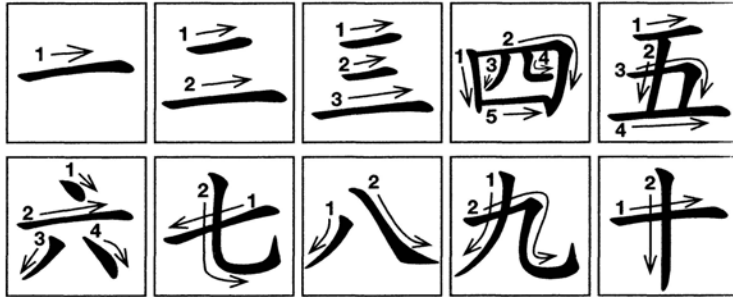


The rules of stroke order in writing Chinese characters and character components are as follows:

Example	Stroke order	Rule
十	一 丨	十 First horizontal, then vertical
人	丿 ㇇	人 First left-falling, then right-falling
三	一 一 一	三 From top to bottom
州	丶 丿 丨 州 州 州	州 From left to right
月	丿 丨 月 月 月	月 First outside, then inside
四	丨 冂 四 四 四	四 Finish inside, then close
小	丨 丿 小 小 小	小 Middle, then the two sides

Numbers 1-10

Now let's try writing the numbers 1 to 10. We have shown the direction and sequence of each stroke to help you. It is helpful to think of each character, however simple or complex, as occupying a square of the same size.



Numbers 11-99

- 11 is 10 + 1 = 十一
 12 is 10 + 2 = 十二
 20 is 2 × 10 = 二十
 30 is 3 × 10 = 三十
 65 is 6 × 10 + 5 = 六十五
 99 is 9 × 10 + 9 = 九十九

It is worth noting that Arabic numerals are being used more and more in China. Newspapers and magazines in the People's Republic all use Arabic numerals for dates and (large) numbers. The traditional Chinese characters are still widely used in Hong Kong and Taiwan.

Practice

1 Which numbers do the following characters represent?

- | | |
|------|-------|
| a 二 | f 二十四 |
| b 六 | g 八十三 |
| c 十 | h 六十九 |
| d 五 | i 五十七 |
| e 十一 | j 三十六 |

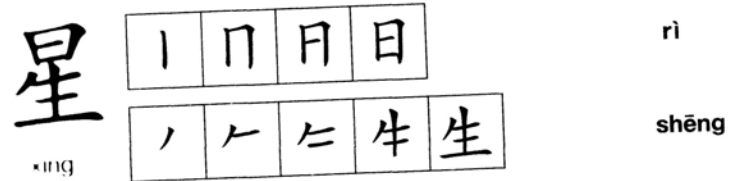
2 Write out the following numbers in Chinese characters:

- a 3 b 8 c 10 d 15 e 42 f 98 g 67

(The answers to all the exercises are in the **Key to the exercises** at the back of the book.)

Days of the week

As you need to know to write the characters for the days of the week are the two characters *xīng* (star) and *qī* (period) which, when combined together, form the word for *week*; plus the numbers 1 to 6 and the characters for *sun* (rì) or *day* (tiān). *Xīng* is made up of the radical 日 (sun) and 生 (to give birth):

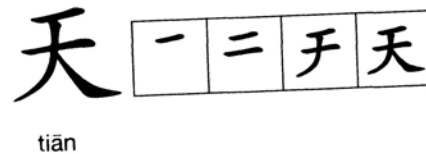


It is made up of the phonetic element 其 qí and the radical 月 (yuè (moon)).



You have already met 日 rì (sun).

天 (tiān) is also a nice easy character:



It is actually made up of one horizontal stroke plus the character 大 dà (big).

Revise the days of the week (see p. 46) and then do the following exercises.

Practice

3 Which day of the week ...

- a do people go to church? 星期
- b comes after Tuesday? 星期
- c are many football matches played in the UK? 星期
- d comes before Friday? 星期

4 Now fill in the missing characters for the days of the week given below:

- a Sunday 星期 or 星期
- b Tuesday 星 二
- c Friday 星 五
- d Thursday 期四
- e Saturday 期六

How to write the date

For this you need to revise your numbers (1-31) and the characters for *moon* or *month* (yuè 月). Having done that, check up on how to say the date in Chinese (see p. 50). In formal *written* Chinese rì 日 is used instead of hào 号. Thus, 21 February is:

二月二十一日 èryuè èrshíyī rì

Practice

5 Can you recognize the following dates?

- a 十一月三日
- b 六月十八日
- c 七月十一日
- d 十月十四日
- e 八月二十九日

6 Can you write out the following dates in Chinese characters?

a Christmas Day (25 December)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

b International Women's Day (8 March) (see cartoon at the end of this unit)

--	--	--	--

c Your birthday (you might not fill all the squares in!)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

d Your father's birthday

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

e Your mother's birthday

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

How to write the years

This is dead easy! Revise what you learnt on p. 50.

1945 is 一九四五 nián (year)

Nián is written:

年

丶	勹	勹	勹	勹	年
---	---	---	---	---	---

Practice

7 Write down the years represented by the Chinese characters in the spaces provided:

- c.g. 一九一四年 1914
- a 二〇〇*八年 _____
- b 一九三七年 _____
- c 一九四九年 _____
- d 一八八五年 _____
- e 一六四二年 _____

* 〇 is used for 'zero' in the People's Republic of China while the traditional character 零 líng is still widely used in Hong Kong and Taiwan.

How to write the time

For this you will need to learn to write the character for *minute* 分 *fēn* and the characters for *o'clock* 点 (*zhōng*). Before you do this, revise how to tell the time on pp. 49–50. Now let's look at the two characters 点 and 钟.

点

diǎn

is made up of the radical for fire 火 *huǒ* ... (also written 火) and the phonetic element 占 *zhàn*. Whoops! This one has moved a long way from its original pronunciation. **Diǎn** is written as follows:

丨	丨	丨	占	占	点	点	点	点	点
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

diǎn

钟

zhōng

is made up of the radical for *metal* 金 *jīn* 钅 (also written 金) and the phonetic element 中 *zhōng*. Whew! This character is pronounced *zhōng* too! **Zhōng** is written as follows:

ノ	ノ	ノ	金	金	钟	钟	钟	钟	钟
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

zhōng

So 3.20 is 三点二十分 and 5.00 is 五点钟

1 By the way, you should never give a Chinese person a clock for a present, as the character for 'clock' has exactly the same sound and tone (*zhōng*) as the character in classical Chinese meaning 'the end' or 'death'. So giving somebody a clock might send the wrong message!

You will also need to know the characters for *quarter* 刻 *kè*, for *half* 半 *bàn*, and for *minus* or *to lack* 差 *chà*.

刻

kè

is made up of the radical for *knife* 刀 *dāo* 刂 (also written 刀) and the phonetic element 亥 *hài*. **Kè** is written as follows:

丶	丶	亥	亥	亥	刻	刻	刻	刻	刻
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

kè

半

bàn

is made up of the vertical line radical 丨 and the phonetic element 八 *bā* (often written 丷 as here), plus two horizontal lines. **Bàn** is written as follows:

丨	丨	八	八	半	半	半	半	半	半
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

bàn

差

chà

is made up of the radical for *sheep* 羊 *yáng* 羊 (slanted here) and the phonetic element 工 *gōng*. No help here for pronunciation, unfortunately. **Chà** is written as follows:

丶	丶	工	工	羊	羊	差	差	差	差
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

chà

Practice

What time is it?

- a 九点一刻 9.15
- b 十二点二十五分
- c 六点半
- d 差十分四点
- e 八点差一刻

Can you write out the following times in Chinese characters? (One square represents one Chinese character, but there are alternatives.)

a 6.20

--	--	--	--	--	--

b 11.45

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

c 10.10

--	--	--	--	--

d 4.48

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

e 7.30

--	--	--	--

Congratulations! If you have got this far you obviously have an aptitude for writing and recognizing Chinese characters. You will be able to build on your knowledge in the second half of the book. Hopefully some of the signs in the first half of the book will also make a bit more sense to you.

The different style of writing Chinese characters is an art form known as calligraphy, which is highly valued by the Chinese. You have just had a little taste of it!

If you have enjoyed learning something about Chinese characters, why not go on to *Teach Yourself Beginner's Chinese Script*, which will allow you to explore the Chinese script even more?



International Women's Day (8th March) and the day after . . .

12

zài lǚguǎn at the hotel

In this unit you will learn

- how to check into a hotel
- how to say if something is wrong
- how to make requests
- how to make complaints

Revise before you start

The numbers in brackets refer to the unit in which the item first appears.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| • use of possessive <i>de</i> (3) | • when ... (10) |
| • measure words (4)(7) | • <i>tài</i> ... <i>le</i> (7) |
| • making comparisons (6)(7) | • not any more (10) |
| • room numbers (3) | • to do something for somebody (6) |
| • new situation <i>le</i> (5) | • to be in the middle of doing something (6) |
| • verb endings (10) | |
| • helping verbs (6) | |
| • how long (9) | |

长城饭店

CHÁNGCHÉNG FÀNDIÀN

和平宾馆

HÉPING BĪNGUǎN

东风旅馆

DŌNGFĒNG LǚGUǎN

In Chinese, there are several words for something that has just one word in English. Read the following passage and find out what those words are and what they mean. Furthermore, if you go to China as a foreigner can you stay in just any hotel so long as you can afford it? (Words in *italics* are explained in the box below the passage.)



Fàndiàn Hotel

Xuǎnzé lǚguǎn Choosing a hotel

Hotel zhèi gè *cí* de Zhōngwén kěyǐ shì *bīnguǎn*, *fàndiàn*, *lǚguǎn* hé *lǚdiàn*. Fàndiàn hé bīnguǎn *yībān* hěn dà, lǚguǎn hé lǚdiàn *yībān* bú dà. *Guǎn* hé *diàn* dōu shì 'house' de *yìsì*. *Bīn* de *yìsì* shì 'guest', *lǚ* de *yìsì* shì 'travel'. *Fàn* shì 'food' de *yìsì*.

Zài Zhōngguó hěn duō lǚguǎn hé lǚdiàn bú ràng wàiguó-rén zhù. Wèishénme? Yǒu gèzhǒng gèyàng de *yuányīn*. Yìqián hěn

kuò dà fàndiàn, dà bīnguǎn bú ràng Zhōngguó-rén zhù, xiànzài gāng *le*. Dà fàndiàn, bīnguǎn de *tiáojiàn* bǐ lǚguǎn, lǚdiàn de *tiáojiàn* hǎo duō. Dāngrán tāmen yě bǐ lǚguǎn, lǚdiàn guì kuo *le*.

bīnguǎn/fàndiàn/lǚguǎn/lǚdiàn	hotel
<i>cí</i>	word
<i>fàn</i>	food; meal
gèzhǒng gèyàng de <i>tiáojiàn</i>	all kinds of condition
wèishénme?	why?
<i>xuǎnzé</i>	to choose
<i>yībān</i>	usually
<i>yuányīn</i>	reason

Exercise 1 Read the opening passage twice. Then answer the following questions in Chinese. You may need to read the passage a few more times to answer all the questions.

- What are some of the Chinese words for *hotel*?
- What do they mean?
- Can foreigners stay in any hotel in China?
- Does the passage tell you why this is the case?
- What is the position for Chinese people themselves?

Key words and phrases

<i>ānjìng</i>	quiet
Bāo zǎocān ma?	Is breakfast included?
-zǎocān/zǎofàn	breakfast
<i>biǎo</i>	form
<i>biéde</i>	other
<i>bǐjiào</i>	relatively
<i>búguò</i>	but, however
<i>cèsuǒ</i>	toilet
<i>chǎo</i>	noisy
<i>cì</i>	time, occasion
<i>dǎ diànhuà</i>	to telephone
<i>dānrén/shuāngrén fángjiān</i>	single / double room
... de <i>shíhou</i>	when
<i>diànshì</i>	television
<i>fúwù</i>	service

fúwùtái	reception (lit. service platform)
gàosu	to tell
hái yǒu	another thing (lit. still have)
huán	to return something to
hùzhào	passport
jiān	(measure word for rooms)
jīnglǐ	manager
línǜ	shower
měiyuán	US dollar
néng	to be able to, can
rúguǒ	if
shénme shíhou?	when? / what time?
shuǐ	water
tián	to fill in (a form)
wǎnfàn	dinner, supper
xiǎng yào	would like
xiǎoshí	hour
xǐzǎojiān	bathroom
xiū	to repair
yàoshi	key
yíding	certainly, definitely
yǒu wèntí	to have problems
zhǎo	to ask for, to want to see
zhèngzài	at this moment
zǒu	to leave

Dialogues

▶ Dialogue 1

Frank is checking into a hotel. Listen to or read the dialogue between Frank and the *fúwùyuán* (attendant), and then do Exercise 2.

Fúwùyuán	Nín hǎo!
Frank	Nǐ hǎo! Wǒ xiǎng yào yì jiān dānrén fángjiān.
Fúwùyuán	Nín yùding le ma?
Frank	Méi yǒu.
Fúwùyuán	Nín yào zhù jǐ tiān?
Frank	Sān, sì tiān. Wǒ míngtiān gàosu nǐ wǒ shénme shíhou zǒu, kěyǐ ma?

Fúwùyuán	Kěyǐ.
Frank	Yì tiān duōshao qián?
Fúwùyuán	Dānrén fángjiān měi tiān wǔshí měiyuán.
Frank	Bāo zǎocān ma?
Fúwùyuán	Dāngrán bāo.
Frank	Yǒu xǐzǎojiān ma?
Fúwùyuán	Yǒu. Búguò zhǐ yǒu línǜ hé cèsuǒ.
Frank	Hǎo ba.
Fúwùyuán	Qǐng xiān tián yíxià zhèi zhāng biǎo. . . . Qǐng gěi wǒ nín de hùzhào. Nín zǒu de shíhòu huán gěi nín.
Frank	Zhè shì wǒ de hùzhào.
Fúwùyuán	Nín de fángjiān shì èr-líng-yāo, zài èr lóu. Zhè shì yàoshi.
Frank	Xièxie.
Fúwùyuán	Rúguǒ nín yǒu wèntí, qǐng gěi fúwùtái dǎ diànhuà.
Frank	Bú huì yǒu wèntí ba.

yíxià(r) placed after the verb softens the meaning; it is often used after instructions or advice as in the example above.

Exercise 2 Are these statements about Dialogue 1 **duì** or **bú duì**?

	duì	bú duì?
a. The price does not include breakfast.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
b. The guest can take a bath in his room.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
c. The hotel keeps the guest's passport during his stay.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
d. The guest's room is on the first floor.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
e. The guest is asked to ring reception if he has any problems.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Fúwùtái

服 务 台

Reception

Dialogue 2

Frank is ringing reception from his hotel room to make some complaints. What are his complaints and how are they resolved?

- Fúwùyuan** Nín hǎo. Fúwùtái.
Frank Wǒshì (zhù) èr-líng-yāo fángjiān de Frank. Wǒde fángjiān tài chǎo le. Néng bu néng huàn yì jiān ānjìng yìdiǎnr de?
Fúwùyuan Duìbuqǐ, méi yǒu biéde dānrén fángjiān le. Zhǐ yǒu shuāngrén fángjiān.
Frank Shuāngrén fángjiān yì wǎnshang duōshao qián?
Fúwùyuan Bǐ dānrén fángjiān guì èrshí měiyuán.
Frank Tài guì le.
Fúwùyuan Rúguǒ míngtiān wǒmen yǒu biéde dānrén fángjiān, yídìng gěi nín huàn.
Frank Hǎo ba. Ò, hái yǒu, wǒde línyù zěnme méi yǒu rè shuǐ?
Fúwùyuan Duìbuqǐ, xiànzài zhèngzài xiū. Wǔ ge xiǎoshí yǐhòu jiù yǒu le.
Frank Wǔ ge xiǎoshí yǐhòu? Bù xíng. Wǒ yào zhǎo nǐmende jīnglǐ.

You know how to say A is much more expensive than B:

A bǐ B guì deduō/duōle.

If you want to say exactly by how much A is more expensive than B, you use:

A bǐ B guì + (by how much)

Shuāngrén fángjiān bǐ dānrén fángjiān guì èrshí měiyuán. A double room is US\$20 more expensive than a single.

Exercise 3 You are staying in a hotel in China. The following dialogue is between you and the hotel *receptionist* (fúwùyuan). You are ringing to complain:

- Fúwùyuan** Nín hǎo. Fúwùtái.
a You (Say your name and that you are in room 301 and your room is too small. Ask if it is possible to change to a bigger one.)
Fúwùyuan Duìbuqǐ, méi yǒu biéde dānrén fángjiān le. Zhǐ yǒu shuāngrén fángjiān.
b You (Ask how much a double room costs.)
Fúwùyuan Bǐ dānrén fángjiān guì èrshí měiyuán.
c You (Say that's too much. Another thing. Ask why there is no television in your room.)
Fúwùyuan Duìbuqǐ, diànshì xiànzài zhèngzài xiū. Liǎng ge bàn xiǎoshí yǐhòu jiù xiū-hǎo le.

.I You

(Say the football match will be starting in half an hour!) (Use after half an hour)

Key words and phrases

cāntīng	restaurant, canteen
chī de	something to eat
hē de	something to drink
huǒtuǐ	ham
jiā	to add
jiàoxíng	to (call to) wake up
jīròu	chicken (meat)
kāfēi	coffee
máfan	(to) trouble
nǎi	milk
nǎilào	cheese
niúròu	beef
qǐ	to get up
sānmíngzhì	sandwich
shénme yàng de?	what kind?
sòng lái	to send over (to the speaker)
sòng qù	to send over (away from the speaker)
táng	sugar
Wǎn'ān!	Good night!
xiànzài	now
yíhuì(r)	a short while
yīnliào	drink(s)

Dialogue 3

Frank gets back to his hotel very late and finds the bar (jiǔbā) closed. Read the dialogue and find out why.

- Fúwùyuan** Nín hǎo. Fúwùtái.
Frank Wǒ shì èr-líng-yāo fángjiān de Frank Goodway. Néng bu néng máfan nimen gěi wǒ sòng lái yìdiǎnr chī de? Wǒ è le.
Fúwùyuan Duìbuqǐ, cāntīng xiànzài guān mén le. Wǒmen zhǐ yǒu sānmíngzhì hé yīnliào.
Frank Kěyǐ. Nimen yǒu shénme yàng de sānmíngzhì?
Fúwùyuan Wǒmen yǒu nǎilào de, huǒtuǐ de, jīròu de hé niúròu de.
Frank Wǒ yào yí ge nǎilào de, yí gè niúròu de, hé yì bēi kāfēi.

- Fúwùyuan** Hǎo de. Kāfēi yào jiā nǎi, jiā táng ma?
Frank Yào jiā nǎi, bù jiā táng.
Fúwùyuan Xíng. Wǒmen yìhuì jiù sòng qù.
Frank Hái yǒu. Míngtiān zǎoshàng wǒ yào qǐ-de hěn zǎo.
 Nǐmen néng bu néng dǎ diànhuà jiàoxíng wǒ?
Fúwùyuan Kěyǐ. Jǐ diǎn?
Frank Qī diǎn bàn.
Fúwùyuan Méi wèntí.
Frank Xièxie nǐ. Wǎn'ān.
Fúwùyuan Wǎn'ān.



酒吧

Jiǔbā

The Chinese language is much more specific about the direction in which things are said or done by the speaker than English. This means that you will often find the little words **qù** (go) or **lái** (come) at the end of a sentence: **qù** indicates *away* from the speaker and **lái** indicates *towards* the speaker:

- Néng bu néng máfan nǐmen gěi wǒ sòng lái yìdiǎnr chī de?
 Wǒmen yìhuì jiù sòng qù.
*Could I trouble you to send me up something to eat?
 We'll send it up as soon as we can (lit. in a moment).*

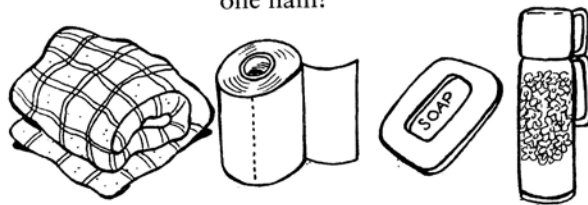
请勿打扰

Qǐng wù dǎrǎo! Do not disturb!

i Rooms in small hotels in China are usually equipped with thermos flasks containing hot water for you to make tea. These are emptied and refilled every morning often quite early so if you don't want to be disturbed at say 7am, remember to put the 'Don't disturb' notice on your door. When you leave your room, you can put the thermos flask(s) outside your door so that they can be refilled before your return.

Exercise 4 Make the following requests in Chinese using the pattern: **Néng bu néng gěi wǒ ... ?**. If you want to be more polite, you can say **néng bu néng máfan nǐ(men) gěi wǒ ... ?**. The measure word for each object is written in brackets after it.

- a. Can you send me up something to eat?
 something to drink?
 a cup of tea, with milk but no sugar?
 two sandwiches, one cheese, and one ham?



tiánzi (tiáo) **wèishēngzhǐ** (juǎn) **xiāngzào** (kuài) **nuǎnshuǐpíng** (gè)

- b. Can you give me a wake-up call?
 give me a phone call?
 buy me a bottle (píng) of wine?
 give me another blanket/roll of toilet paper?
 give me a bigger piece of soap?
 give me a thermos flask (of hot water)?

Exercise 5 Listen to the recording and fill in the following blanks. You need to remember the words **fúwù** (service) and **lǐmào** (to be polite/courteous). If you haven't got the recording, read the dialogue which comes after this exercise and then fill in the blanks.

- a. Frank now stays at _____ Hotel.
 b. The conditions in the hotel are _____.
 c. The service there is _____.
 d. The staff are _____.
 e. He has changed his hotel _____.

- Lili** Nǐ xiànzài zhù zài nǎr?
Frank Dōngfāng Bīnguǎn.
Lili Tiáojiàn zěnmeyàng?
Frank Tiáojiàn búcuò, kěshì fúwù bù zěnmeyàng.
Lili Fúwù zěnmè bù hǎo?
Frank Fúwùyuan bú tài lǐmào.
Lili Wèishénme bú huàn yí ge dìfang?
Frank Wǒ yǐjīng huàn le liǎng cì. Zhè shì dì sān cì le.

Cì (*time(s)*) is like **tiān** (*day*) and **nián** (*year*) in that it acts as both a measure word and a noun. *Once* is **yí cì**, *twice* is **liǎng cì** (note that it is **liǎng** and not **èr**), *three times* is **sān cì**, and so on. To say the first time, the second time, and so on all you have to do is put the little word **dì** in front. Note, however, that the second time is **dì-èr cì** and not **dì liǎng cì**.

Exercise 6 The receptionist at a hotel is asking you a few questions. How would you respond?

- Fúwùyuán** Nǐ yùdìng le ma?
 a **You** (No. I hope (**xīwàng**) you've still got rooms.)
Fúwùyuán Wǒmen hái yǒu jǐ jiān. Nǐ yào shénme fángjiān?
 b **You** (A double room and a single room.)
Fúwùyuán Nǐmen dāsuan zhù jǐ tiān?
 c **You** (Three or four days. We'll tell you tomorrow when we'll be leaving. Is that OK?)
Fúwùyuán Xíng. Jǐntiān wǎnshang zài bīnguǎn chī wǎnfàn ma?
 d **You** (No thank you, we've already eaten.)

▶ Quick review

You are checking into a hotel. Ask the following questions in Chinese.

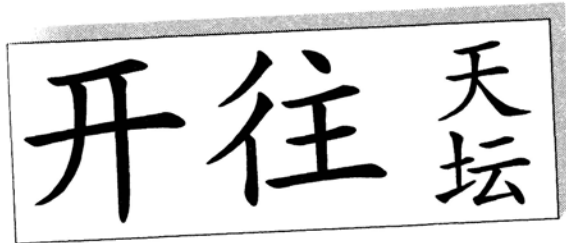
- a Is breakfast included?
 b When is lunch (**wǔfàn**)?
 c Is there a television in the room?
 d Have you got a bigger single room?
 e How much is it per night?

1

3

huǒchē, piào
 hé chūzūchē
 : tickets and taxis

- In this unit you will learn
- how to ask for and understand information about trains
 - how to understand train announcements
 - how to buy train tickets
 - many useful time expressions



Kāi wǎng Tiāntán To Tiantan (Temple of Heaven)

Revise before you start

- yāo (one) (3)
- numbers over 100 (7)
- measure words (4)(7)
- use of de (3)(5)
- making comparisons (6)(7)
- tài ... le (7)
- noun + on (5)
- duō + verb (10)
- how long (9)
- first ... then ... (9)
- use of háishi (6)
- use of ba (3)
- when ... (10)

i Trains in China

In China all trains are numbered. For example, train number 21 is called èrshíyī cì. Train number 161 is either yāo-liù-yāo cì or yībǎi liùshíyī cì. The route of these numbered trains is fixed. Èrshíyī cì goes from Beijing to Shanghai, and èrshíjiǔ cì is the train from Beijing to Hangzhou. In general, the smaller the number of the train the faster it is.

There are three types of train: special express (tèkuài), express (zhíkùài or kuàichē) and normal (pǔtōng kèchē). The general word for train in Chinese is huǒchē for which the literal translation is fire vehicle.

In China they don't have first-class tickets (tóuděng piào) and second-class tickets (èrděng piào). But they do have four types of tickets: ruǎnwò, ruǎnzuo, yingwò and yingzuo. Ruǎnwò is really a first-class sleeper. Ruǎnzuo is just first class. Yingwò is second class sleeper and yingzuo is second class. As you may have noticed, these Chinese words involve different combinations of four characters: ruǎn meaning soft, ying (hard), wò (lying down), and zuò (seat).

Note that train numbers use the word cì (p. 142, Unit 12) after the number:

- train number 21 = 21 cì (èrshíyī cì)
- train number 161 = 161 cì (yībǎi liùshíyī cì; yāo-liù-yāo cì)

Train numbers of three digits can either be broken down into single digits or said as one number. Yāo is used instead of yī to avoid any confusion (see Unit 3, p. 27).

When train announcements are made, the sequence is different from the one you are used to in English. The order is normally kāi wǎng (drive towards) + destination + number (of train). The time is not usually mentioned. Do note that your ticket is only valid for a particular time.

Exercise 1 What is the Chinese for these phrases?

- a 'soft' sleeper
- b 'hard' seat
- c 'soft' seat
- d 'hard' sleeper
- e first class
- f second class

What is the English for these Chinese words?

- g kèchē
- h tèkuài
- i huǒchē
- j kuàichē
- k zhíkùài

Key words and phrases

cì	(number of trains)
dàgài	approximately
děi	to need, must
děng	to wait
hòutiān	the day after tomorrow
kāi	to drive
míngbai	to understand (colloquial)
něi zhǒng?	which kind?
rénmínbì	Chinese currency
shàng	to board (vehicle)
shuì	to sleep
suǒyǐ	so, therefore
ya	(end particle indicating surprise)
Yōnghé Gōng	the Lama Temple (in Beijing)

yǒu shénme . . . ? *in what ways . . . ? (lit. has what)*
 Yǒu shénme bù yíyàng? *In what ways are they different?*
 zhǎo (qián) *to give change*

Travelling by train

èrděng	<i>second-class (ticket)</i>
ruǎnwò	<i>'soft' sleeper</i>
ruǎnzuo	<i>'soft' seat</i>
tèkuài	<i>special express</i>
tóuděng	<i>first-class (ticket)</i>
yìngwò	<i>'hard' sleeper</i>
yìngzuò	<i>'hard' seat</i>
zhíkuaì	<i>express (train)</i>

Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Frank is buying a train ticket from Běijīng to Shànghǎi. Listen to, or read, the dialogue and find out which trains go to Shànghǎi.

Frank	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yì zhāng qù Shànghǎi de huǒchē piào.
Assistant	Něi tiān de?
Frank	Hòutiān de.
Assistant	Yào nǐ cì chē de?
Frank	Wǒ bù míngbai nǐde yìsi.
Assistant	Qù Shànghǎi de huǒchē yǒu shísān cì, èrshíyī cì hé yāo-liù-yāo cì.
Frank	Tāmen yǒu shénme bù yíyàng?
Assistant	Shísān cì hé èrshíyī cì shì tèkuài, yìbǎi liùshíyī cì shì zhíkuaì.
Frank	Shénme shì tèkuài hé zhíkuaì?
Assistant	Tèkuài jiù shì fēicháng kuài de yìsi. Shísān cì tèkuài bǐ yāo-liù-yāo cì zhíkuaì kuài sì, wǔ ge xiǎoshí.
Frank	Shì bu shì tèkuài de piào yě bǐ zhíkuaì de piào guì?
Assistant	Nà dāngrán le.

Note that if you want to say that train no. 13 is four hours quicker than train no. 161 you say:

13 cì bǐ 161 cì kuài (*quick*) + *by how much*
 13 cì bǐ 161 cì kuài sì ge xiǎoshí

There is another example using *màn* *slow* in Dialogue 2. Look out for it!

This is the same pattern as you used in Unit 12 (p. 138), only here you are talking about a difference in time rather than money.

Shì bu shì can also be put at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence as well as at the end (see Unit 3). It conveys the idea that the speaker is confident that what she says is correct but wishes to soften the tone. You might have noticed that there is no tone on the second shì when it occurs at the end of a sentence.

Exercise 2 Answer the following questions based on the opening passage and Dialogue 1.

- Which trains go to Shanghai?
- Which train is faster, zhíkuaì or tèkuài?
- Is it cheaper to buy a ticket for a tèkuài than for a zhíkuaì train?
- What are the two ways of saying train number 351 in Chinese?
- Is train number 243 faster than train number 43?

Dialogue 2

Ann is now at the Beijing Railway Station ticket office. What type of ticket does she want to buy and what ticket does she buy in the end?

Ann	Qǐng wèn, hái yǒu shíbā hào èrshíyī cì de piào ma?
Assistant	Yǒu. Nín yào nǐ zhōng piào?
Ann	Wǒ yào sān zhāng yìngwò.
Assistant	Duìbuqǐ, yìngwò zhǐ yǒu yì zhāng le. Wǒmen hái yǒu ruǎnwò hé yìngzuò.
Ann	Ruǎnwò bǐ yìngwò guì duōshao?
Assistant	Yìbǎi bāshí kuài.
Ann	Nàme shíbā hào yāo-liù-yāo cì hái yǒu yìngwò ma?
Assistant	Yǒu.
Ann	Tài hǎo le! Wǒ mǎi sān zhāng shíbā hào yāo-liù-yāo cì de yìngwò piào.
Assistant	Yāo-liù-yāo cì bǐ èrshíyī cì màn sì ge xiǎoshí.
Ann	Méi guānxi. Wǒmen kěyǐ zài huǒchē shàng duō shuǐ yì ge xiǎoshí.

北京地下铁道车票



票价: 贰元 5 050068

Ticket for the underground/subway



Train ticket

火车站

Huǒchēzhàn Train station

候车室

Hòuchēshì Waiting room

Some useful time expressions

qiánnián	the year before last
qùnián	last year
jīnnián	this year
míngnián	next year
hòunián	the year after next

shàng shàng ge yuè	the month before last
shàng (ge) yuè	last month
zhè/zhèi (ge) yuè	this month
xià (ge) yuè	next month
xià xià ge yuè	the month after next

shàng shàng ge xīngqī	the week before last
shàng (ge) xīngqī	last week
zhè/zhèi (ge) xīngqī	this week
xià (ge) xīngqī	next week
xià xià ge xīngqī	the week after next

qiántiān	the day before yesterday
zuótiān	yesterday
jīntiān	today
míngtiān	tomorrow
hòutiān	the day after tomorrow

Exercise 3 In Dialogue 2 there are two useful structures, or patterns, for buying tickets.

- i Qǐng wèn, hái yǒu X ma? *Have you still got X?*
- ii Wǒmen mǎi X zhāng (time) de (type/event) piào. *We would like to have X number of Y tickets for Z (where Y is the type of ticket and Z is the time).*

Now here's some practice: You want to know if the following kinds of tickets are still available.

Example: tickets for next Tuesday's football match
You ask: Qǐng wèn, hái yǒu xià ge xīngqī'èr de zúqiú piào ma?

- a tickets for tonight's film
- b tickets for the flight (use fēijī) on October 4th
- c tickets for train number 153
- d tickets for trains going to Tianjin

If the answer to your above questions is *yes*, you can simply say **Wǒ yào X zhāng**. If, however, you know the tickets you want to buy are available, you would use pattern **ii**.

Example: Two film tickets for 2 o'clock Sunday afternoon
 You say: **Wǒ mǎi liǎng zhāng xīngqī'èr xiàwǔ liǎng diǎn de diányǐng piào.**

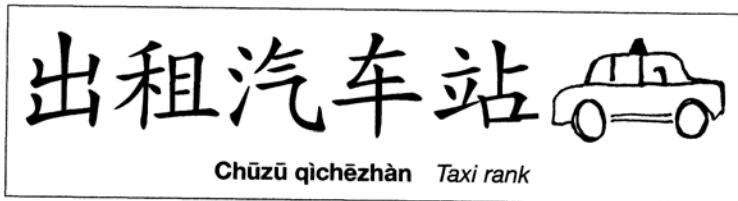
- e three tickets for tonight's film
- f four tickets for the flight on October 4th
- g five tickets for train number 153
- h six tickets for trains going to Tianjin

Exercise 4 Can you tell your Chinese friends something about British trains in Chinese?

- a There are two types of tickets: first class and second class.
- b First-class tickets are more expensive than second-class tickets.
- c Trains in Britain are both fast and comfortable.

If you are from Fǎguó, Měiguó, Déguó, Yìdàlì or other countries, say something similar to the above sentences in Chinese.

Dialogue 3



The following dialogue is between a taxi driver (**sījī**) and his customer (**chènghè**). Before you read the dialogue, listen to the recording and answer the following two questions:

- 1 How many places did the man plan to visit?
- 2 How much did the taxi-driver charge him in the end?

Now read the dialogue and see if you answered the questions correctly.

- Sījī** Nín qù nǎr?
Chènghè Wǒ xiǎng xiān qù Yōnghé Gōng, zài qù Tiāntán.
Sījī Qǐng shàng chē ba.
Chènghè Nǐ néng bu néng xiān gào sù wǒ qù zhè liǎng ge dìfang dàgài děi duōshao qián?
Sījī Qù Yōnghé Gōng sishíwǔ kuài, zài qù Tiāntán yě shì sishíwǔ kuài.
Chènghè Shì rénmínbì háishì měiyuán?
Sījī Rénmínbì.
Chènghè Hǎo ba.
 (getting off at Tiāntán Park)

- Chènghè** Xièxie nǐ. Zhè shì yībǎi kuài. Bié zhǎo (qián) le.
Sījī Duìbuqǐ. Yígòng yībǎi jiǔshí kuài.
Chènghè Zěnme shì yībǎi jiǔshí kuài?
Sījī Nǐ qù Yōnghé Gōng de shíhou, wǒ děng le nǐ liǎng ge xiǎoshí. Děng yí ge xiǎoshí wǔshí kuài. Suǒyǐ yígòng yībǎi jiǔshí kuài.
Chènghè Nǐ zěnme méi xiān gào sù wǒ?
Sījī Nǐ méi wèn ya.

Line 4 in **Dialogue 3** is a long sentence. **Bié zháojí** (*don't worry!*)! Try the following two exercises and you'll be able to say it fluently.

Exercise 5 This exercise is called 'back chaining'. You practise long sentences like these by reading them phrase by phrase (the whole gradually increasing in length), starting with the end of the sentence first.

yìngwò piào
 yāo-liù-yāo cì de yìngwò piào
 shíbā hào yāo-liù-yāo cì de yìngwò piào
 Wǒ mǎi sān zhāng shíbā hào yāo-liù-yāo cì de yìngwò piào
I'll buy three second-class sleepers for train number 161 on the 18th.
 (lit. I buy three measure word eighteen number one six one time hard sleeper ticket.)

duōshao qián?
 dàgài děi duōshao qián?
 qù zhè liǎng ge dìfang dàgài děi duōshao qián?
 xiān gào sù wǒ qù zhè liǎng ge dìfang dàgài děi duōshao qián?
 Nǐ néng bu néng xiān gào sù wǒ qù zhè liǎng ge dìfang dàgài děi duōshao qián?
Can you first tell me roughly how much it costs to go to these two places?
 (lit. you can not can first tell me go these two places roughly need how much money?)

Exercise 6 The long sentence you have just practised has two parts.

The main part is:

Nǐ néng bu néng gào sù wǒ 'X'. *Can you tell me 'X'?*

The second part can be an independent question such as *how old is he?* or *where does she live?*. In the dialogue the independent question is **qù zhè liǎng ge dìfang yào duōshao qián?** (*how much does it cost to get to these two places?*).

Now request the following information starting with *nǐ néng bu néng gào su wǒ*:

Example: How old is he?

You ask: *Nǐ néng bu néng gào su wǒ tā duō dà le?*

First try these independent questions and then combine each one with the main sentence.

- Where does she live?
- What is your telephone number?
- How old is his daughter?
- How long do they intend staying there?

Exercise 7 Put each group of phrases into the correct order to make complete questions in Chinese.

Example: How much, by train, go to Nanjing?

You ask: *Zuò huǒchē qù Nánjīng děi duōshao qián?*

- How much / to go to Xī'ān/ by train?
- To fly / how long / from London to Shànghǎi?
- To go to Héping Hotel / by taxi / how much?
- By ship (*chuán*) / how long / to go from Japan to China?

Quick review

Can you match the Chinese words on the left with their English equivalents on the right? There will be one word in the left-hand column that you will not recognize. Which one is it? What must it mean? (Notice that all the Chinese words have the character *chē* in them.)

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| a zìxíngchē | i coach |
| b huǒchē | ii express (train) |
| c chūzū (qì)chē | iii bicycle |
| d gōnggòng qìchē | iv train |
| e kuàichē | v taxi |
| f chángtú qìchē | vi normal (passenger) train |
| g pǔtōng kèchē | vii bus |

Chūzū qìchē



14

free time and entertainment

yúliè huódòng

- In this unit you will learn**
- how to say what you like doing in your free time
 - how to ask somebody what they would like to do
 - about sports and hobbies
 - about making arrangements
 - about summer and winter, indoor and outdoor activities

Revise before you start

- use of *de* after verb (8)
- *zuì* (*most*) (7)
- *gèng* (*even more*) (8)
- use of *háishi* (6)
- both ... and ... (9)
- to be in the middle of doing something (6)
- making comparisons (6)(7)
- A is the same as B (6)

A park in Chinese is actually a public garden. Do you remember Frank in Unit 6? If you go to China, try to get up early at least one morning, say at 6 o'clock, and go to a local park. You too will be fascinated by what some of the Chinese do there. The following passage tells us a little bit more about what people do in a park.

▶ Qù gōngyuán *Going to the park*

Hěn duō Zhōngguó-rén qǐ-de hěn zǎo. Tāmen rènwéi zǎo shuì zǎo qǐ duì shēntǐ hǎo. Zǎoshàng tāmen zuò shénme? Bù shǎo rén qù gōngyuán.

Zài gōngyuán lǐ, tāmen dǎ tàijíquán, zuò qìgōng, chàng gē, tiào wǔ, děngděng. Yǒu de lǎo rén zài gōngyuán sànbù, xià qí, dǎ pái, chàng jīngjù.

Hěn duō gōngyuán dōu yǒu hú. Zài běifāng xiàtiān kěyǐ zài hú lǐ yóuyǒng, dōngtiān kěyǐ zài hú shàng huá bīng.



Key words and phrases

běifāng	the north
chàng (gē)	to sing (song)
chàng jīngjù	to sing Peking opera
dǎ pái	to play cards
děngděng	etc.
dōngtiān	winter
gōngyuán	park
hú	lake
huá bīng	to skate
lǎo	old
lǎo rén	old person / people
qǐ	to get up
rènwéi	to think, to believe
sàn bù	to stroll
shǎo	few, less
bù shǎo	quite a lot
tiào wǔ	to dance
xià qí	to play chess
xiàtiān	summer
yóuyǒng	to swim
zài (hú) lǐ/shàng	in / on (the lake)
zǎo	early
zǎo shuì	early to bed
zǎo qǐ	early to rise

Exercise 1 When you have the opportunity, ask a Chinese person these questions:

- a Do the Chinese get up very early?
- b Where do you go in the morning?
- c What do old people do in the park?
- d Do you swim in the lake?

i There is a huge difference between the type of Chinese which is spoken and the type of Chinese which is written. Spoken Chinese is normally much more informal than written Chinese. Sometimes a different word is used in written Chinese to convey the same meaning as a simpler word in the spoken language. There is a good example of this in the passage above where *rènwéi* (to be of the opinion that) is used instead of *xiǎng* (to think).

This need not concern you very much on a practical level because you are concentrating on spoken Chinese. Unless, of course, you plan to get to grips with the Chinese writing system at some stage and therefore read material in Chinese characters. Why not go on to *Teach Yourself Chinese* once you've finished this book or to *Teach Yourself Beginner's Chinese Script* if you are especially interested in Chinese characters?

Key words and phrases

Àolínpīkè	Olympic
bàn	to handle
bàng	excellent (colloquial)
biǎoyǎn	show, performance; to act, perform
dànyuànrúci	I hope so
dào	to arrive
děng	to wait
fāngbiàn	convenient
gèng duō de	more (of something)
hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn	long time no see
hòu bàn (chǎng)	second half (of a show)
huódòng	activity
jīhuì	opportunity
juéding	to decide
liànxí	to practise, exercise
lóushàng	upstairs
lǚxíng	to travel; travel
lǚxíngtuán	tourist group
niánqīng	young
pái	row (of seats)
X pái Y hào	number Y in row X
qiānzhèng	visa
qiūtiān	autumn
Shì nǐ ya!	It's you!
shòu	thin
shūfu	comfortable
tán	to talk, chat
tán liàn'ài	to be in love, go steady (lit. talk love)
tiào dískē	to go disco dancing
tǐng	quite, fairly
wèizi	seat
xué-hǎo	to master (see Unit 10, p. 115)
yǎn	to act
yúlè	entertainment
yùndòng	sports, take exercises
yùndònghuì	sports meeting, games
zhǎo	to look for
zhěngtiān	all day
zìjǐ	oneself
zìyóu	freedom
zuijìn	recent, recently

Nǐ xǐhuan shénme yùndòng?

What's your favourite sport/game?

dǎ	to play ...	(tī) zúqiú	(play) football
dá pīngpāngqiú	... pingpong	qí mǎ	horse riding
dǎ lánqiú	... basketball		(lit. to ride horse)
dǎ yǔmáoqiú	... badminton	huá xuě	skiing (lit. to slide snow)
dǎ qūgùnqiú	... hockey	(dǎ) Taijijian	(do) Tai Chi sword
dǎ wǎngqiú	... tennis		

Dialogue 1

Edward and Xiǎo Fù are talking about their favourite sports. Listen to the recording and make a note of what sports they each like before you read the dialogue.

Edward Nǐ xǐhuan shénme yùndòng?

Xiǎo Fù Wǒ zuì xǐhuan wǎngqiú (i) hé yóuyǒng (ii).

Edward Wǒ yě xǐhuan wǎngqiú (i), kěshì gèng xǐhuan zúqiú (iv).

Xiǎo Fù Nǐ xǐhuan tī (iii) zúqiú (iv) háishì kàn zúqiú (iv)?

Edward Dōu xǐhuan.

Xiǎo Fù Wǒ zhǐ xǐhuan kàn, bù xǐhuan tī (iii).

Exercise 2 Use the groups of words below to substitute for the sports in Dialogue 1. a under column i substitutes for (i) in the dialogue, i.e. pīngpāngqiú substitutes for wǎngqiú; a under column ii substitutes for (ii) in the dialogue and so on. Do the same with b to e. Each time you have completed one row of substitution read out the dialogue using the new words.

	i	ii	iii	iv
a	pīngpāngqiú	huá bīng	dǎ	lánqiú
b	lánqiú	xià qí	dǎ	yǔmáoqiú
c	yǔmáoqiú	qí mǎ	dǎ	qūgùnqiú
d	qūgùnqiú	huá xuě	dǎ	tàijíquán
e	tàijíquán	tàijijian	dǎ	pái

Exercise 3 What do you like and dislike?

You are given three activities each time. Use i to show an ascending order of preference. Use ii to rank your dislikes. We have given you sample answers in the Key to the exercises.

- i Wǒ xǐhuan A, gèng xǐhuan B, zuì xǐhuan C.
ii Wǒ bù xǐhuan A, gèng bù xǐhuan B, zuì bù xǐhuan C.

Example: diànyǐng, jīngjù, yīnyuèhuì
 i Wǒ xǐhuan kàn jīngjù, gèng xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng, zuì xǐhuan tīng yīnyuèhuì.
 ii Wǒ bù xǐhuan tīng yīnyuèhuì, gèng bù xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng, zuì bù xǐhuan kàn jīngjù.

- a zuò fēijī, zuò chuán, zuò huǒchē
 b qí zìxíngchē, qí mǎ (*horse*), qí mótuōchē (*motorbike*)
 c zuò gōnggòng qìchē (*bus*), zuò dìtiě (*underground/subway*), zuò chūzū (qì)chē
 d kàn jīngjù, kàn diànshì, kàn diànyǐng
 e tīng gǔdiǎn (*classical*) yīnyuè, tīng xiàndài (*modern*) yīnyuè, tīng liúxíng (*pop*) yīnyuè

Dialogue 2

Yáo Mínglǐ is asking Ann about her forthcoming holiday. Why has Ann not yet made up her mind?

- Mínglǐ** Tīngshuō jīnnián qiūtiān nǐ yào qù Zhōngguó lǚxíng.
Ann Duì. Kěshì wǒ hái méi juéding zěnme qù.
Mínglǐ Zěnme qù? Dāngrán zuò fēijī qù. Zuò huǒchē yòu màn yòu bù shūfu.
Ann Wǒ bù shì nèi ge yìsi. Wǒ hái méi juéding gēn lǚxíngtuán qù hái shì zìjǐ qù.
Mínglǐ Gēn lǚxíngtuán qù hěn fāngbiàn, kěshì yòu guì yòu bù zìyóu.
Ann Zìjǐ qù yòu piányì yòu zìyóu, kěshì zhēn bù fāngbiàn.
Mínglǐ Zěnme bù fāngbiàn?
Ann Wǒ yào zìjǐ qù bàn qiánzhèng, dīng fēijī piào, zhǎo lǚguǎn, dēngdēng.
Mínglǐ Kěshì zìjǐ qù kěyǐ yǒu gèng duō de jīhuì liánxi Zhōngwén.
Ann Duì, wǒ yídìng yào xué-hǎo Zhōngwén, èr-ling-ling-bā nián qù Běijīng kàn Àolínpìkè Yùndònghuì.

Note that if you want to say that something still hasn't happened, you put the word **hái** in front of **méi** (yǒu):

- Kěshì wǒ hái méi juéding zěnme qù. *But I haven't yet decided how to go.*
 Tā hái méi yǒu lái (ne). *She still hasn't come.*

There is an optional **ne** at the end of such sentences.

Exercise 4 The following passage is based on Dialogue 2. Fill in the blanks (use one word per blank) according to the information given in the dialogue.

Yáo Mínglǐ (a) dāsuan qù Zhōngguó (b). Kěshì tā (c) (d) juéding qù lǚxíngtuán qù (e) zìjǐ qù. Gēn lǚxíngtuán qù (f) guì (g) bù piányì. Zìjǐ qù yòu (h) yòu (i). Kěshì zìjǐ qù hěn (j) fāngbiàn. Tā yào zìjǐ qù (k) qiánzhèng, (l) fēijī piào, (m) lǚguǎn, dēngdēng.

Dialogue 3

Yáo Mínglǐ and Xiǎo Zhào meet at the cinema entrance. Read the dialogue to find out what they have been doing lately.

- Xiǎo Zhào** Lǎo Qián, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn.
Lǎo Qián Xiǎo Zhào, shì nǐ ya!
Xiǎo Zhào Nín xiànzài zài zuò shénme?
Lǎo Qián Gēn yīqián yíyàng. Měi tiān dāda pái, xiàxia qí, dāda tàijíquán, tīng yǒu yìsi.
Xiǎo Zhào Nín bǐ yīqián niánqīng duōle.
Lǎo Qián Nǎli, nǎli. Lǎo duōle. Xiǎo Zhào, nǐ zuìjīn zài zuò shénme?
Xiǎo Zhào Wǒ zhèngzài tán liàn'ài. Zhèngtiān mǎi dōngxì, kàn diànyǐng, tiào dísikè. Zhēn méi yìsi.
Lǎo Qián Nǐ bǐ yīqián shòu duōle.
Xiǎo Zhào Tán liàn'ài yòu lèi yòu bù zìyóu.
Lǎo Qián Nǐde nǚ péngyou ne?
Xiǎo Zhào Tā hái méi lái ne. Wǒ zài dēng tā.



Tán liàn'ài
To be in love

Gāng jié hūn
Just married

Sān nián yǐhòu
Three years later

Exercise 5 You are having a conversation with a Chinese friend. You begin:

- a **You** (Greet *Xiǎo Wáng* and say you haven't seen him for ages.)
Friend Nǐ hǎo, Xiǎo Mǎ. Shì nǐ ya!
b **You** (Ask him what he is up to these days.)
Friend Gēn yīqián yíyàng. Hái zài xuéxiào (school) gōngzuò.
c **You** (Ask if he is married.)
Friend Hái méi yǒu. Wǒmen míngnián jié hūn.
d **You** (Ask him who he is waiting for.)
Friend Wǒ zài děng wǒ nǚ péngyou. Nǐ qù nǎr?
e **You** (Tell him that you are going swimming.)
Friend Hǎo, zánmen yǐhòu zài tán.
f **You** (Say goodbye to him.)
Friend Zàijiàn!

Dialogue 4

Edward and Xiǎo Fù ran into each other during the interval of a show. Where are they sitting and what do they think of the performance tonight?

- Edward** Nǐ zuò nǎr?
Xiǎo Fù Wǔ pái sì hào.
Edward Nǐ de wèizi zhēn hǎo.
Xiǎo Fù Nǐ zài nǎr?
Edward Wǒ zài lóushàng shí pái sānshí hào.
Xiǎo Fù Nǐ juéde jīntiān de biǎoyǎn zěnmeyàng?
Edward Tāmen chàng-de tīng hǎo. Nǐ juéde ne?
Xiǎo Fù Wǒ juéde tāmen chàng-de hái bú cuò. Kěshì yǎn-de bù zěnmeyàng.
Edward Tīngshuō hòumiàn de biǎoyǎn hěn bàng.
Xiǎo Fù Dànyuànrúcǐ.

楼上
Lóushàng
upstairs

楼下
Lóuxià
downstairs

Note that there are still a few traces of the classical Chinese language in use today. Classical Chinese was monosyllabic but it often put four characters together to express a particular idea. Many of these four-character phrases became set phrases and

will appear in the language today. *Dànyuànrúcǐ* is an example of such a four character phrase. Other examples are:

- wànshūrúyì* (lit. 10,000 things like wish) *your heart's desire*
wúping'ān (lit. all road peace) *bon voyage*
wúshūnfēng (lit. all road following wind) *bon voyage*

Such phrases are usually preceded by *zhù nǐ (men) . . . (wish you . . .)*. This is sometimes omitted, especially in written Chinese.

Exercise 6 Seating in Chinese cinemas and theatres: as you can see in **Exercise 6** below, all the even seat numbers are grouped together on one side and all the uneven ones on the other. Only seat numbers 1 and 2 are next to each other sequentially. This means that when you go into a Chinese cinema you need to check whether your seat numbers are *shuānghào* (even) or *dānhào* (odd). If they are even, you will need to follow the sign for 双号 seats and if odd, the signs for 单号 seats. It is obviously important to understand the way the seating is organized if ever you are buying seats yourself.

Exercise 6 Three rows of seats are given in each section. Give the Chinese for the seat number ○ in each of the three sections A, B, C, below.

双号 *Example:* Row 14, No. 19, upstairs
Lóushàng shíshì pái shíjiǔ hào. 单号

	Shuānghào	Dānhào
A 1	30 28 26 24 8 6 4 2 1 3 5 7 21 23 ○ 27	
2	30 28 26 24 8 6 4 2 1 3 ○ 7 21 23 25 27	
3	30 28 ○ 24 8 6 4 2 1 3 5 7 21 23 25 27	
B 24	30 28 26 ○ 8 6 4 2 1 3 5 7 21 23 25 27	
25	30 28 26 24 8 6 ○ 2 1 3 5 7 21 23 25 27	
26	30 28 26 24 8 6 4 2 1 3 5 7 21 ○ 25 27	
C [Lóushàng]		
11	30 28 26 24 8 ○ 4 2 1 3 5 7 21 23 25 27	
12	30 ○ 26 24 8 6 4 2 1 3 5 7 21 23 25 27	
13	30 28 26 24 8 6 4 2 1 3 5 7 ○ 23 25 27	

Exercise 7 Tell your Chinese guests where their seats are.

a	b	c	d
Row A No. 12	Row J No. 37	Row F No. 40 upstairs	Row K No. 2

Exercise 8 Your Chinese guests are planning a night out. Tell them in Chinese the options they have in their local area, which are shown in the advertisements below.

bāléi	ballet	gējù	opera
huàjù	play	tiān'è	swan

You also need to know the word **bàng**. This time it means *pound in weight* (see Exercise 2, Unit 7, where it means *pound in money*). You should not now be surprised to learn that the Chinese character for **bàng** (*pound*) in money is different from the character for **bàng** (*pound*) in weight. Here they are:

bàng

The right-hand side is exactly the same for both but a pound in money has metal or gold on the left-hand side and a pound in weight has stone or mineral.

bàng

Film: <i>Winter Time</i> 18.00, 20.00, 22.00 <i>Saturday, 25th October</i> <i>Tickets: £5, £6.50</i>	Ballet: <i>Swan Lake</i> Time: 19.30 Sunday 26th October <i>Tickets: £12, £18, £25</i>
Play: <i>When we were young</i> Time: 19.15 Saturday 25th October <i>Tickets: £10, £12.50</i>	Opera: <i>Carmen</i> Time: 20.00 Sunday 26th October <i>Tickets: £16, £24, £30</i>

▶ Quick review

Yán Lóngfēng and his girlfriend Liú Língmǐn are discussing how they are going to spend the evening. Listen to, or read, the dialogue and answer the questions after it.

Yán Zánmen qù kàn diànyǐng ba.
Liú Yǒu shénme hǎo diànyǐng?
Yán Tīngshuō 《Wōmen niánqīng de shíhòu》 búcuò.
Liú Wǒ kàn-guo le. Méi yìsi.

Yán Nàme wǒmen qù tīng yīnyuèhuì ba.
Liú Yǒu shénme yīnyuèhuì?
Yán Nǐ xiǎng tīng Zhōngguó yīnyuè háishi Xīfāng yīnyuè?
Liú Dōu bù xiǎng tīng.
Yán Nàme nǐ xiǎng zuò shénme?
Liú Wǒ xiǎng qù tiào wǔ.

- What did Yán Lóngfēng first suggest that they did?
- Did Liú Língmǐn accept his suggestion? Why or why not?
- What types of concert did Yán Lóngfēng ask his girlfriend to choose from?
- Was Liú Língmǐn interested?
- What did Liú Língmǐn want to do?

Revise before you start

- from ... to ... (9)
- measure words (4)(7)
- money (7)
- weights (7)
- *zui* (most) (7)
- verb endings (10)
- use of *háishi* (6)
- use of *de* (3)(5)
- *hui* (9)
- foreign currency (7)

The following passage tells you something about the *yóujú* (post office) in China. Are there things you can do in a Chinese *yóujú* that you don't normally do in a post office in Britain?

Yóujú *The post office*



post office

Zhōngguó de yóujú gēn Yīngguó de yóujú chābuduō. Zài yóujú nǐ kěyǐ jì xìn, jì qián, mǎ baoguǒ, yě kěyǐ mǎi yóupiào, xinfēng hé míngxìnpiàn, hái kěyǐ zài yóujú cún qián, qǔ qián hé fù zhàng. Zài Zhōngguó de yóujú nǐ hái kěyǐ dǎ chángtú diànhuà hé guójì diànhuà.

Yóujú de kāi mén shíjiān chángcháng bù yíyàng. Yǒude shàngwǔ bā diǎn kāi mén, yǒude bā diǎn bàn kāi mén. Yǒude xiawǔ wǔ diǎn bàn guān mén, yǒude wǎnshàng qī diǎn guān mén. Xīngqīliù, xīngqītiān dōu kāi mén.

Shunbiàn shuō yíxià, Zhōngguó de xìntǒng shì lǜsè de, Yīngguó de xìntǒng shì hóngsè de.

Key words and phrases

bāoguǒ	parcel
chàbuduō	similar (lit. lacking not much)
X gēn Y chàbuduō	X is not much different to Y
chángtú	long distance
dǎ chángtú diànhuà	to make a long distance / national call
cún qián	to deposit money
fù zhàng	to pay bills
guójì	international
jì	to post
míngxìnpiàn	postcard
qǔ qián	withdraw money
shùnbìan shuō yíxià	by the way (when speaking)

15

zài yóujú hé huàn qián

at a post office and
changing money

- In this unit you will learn
- how to buy stamps
 - how to send (and collect) a parcel
 - how to make a long distance call
 - how to send a fax
 - numbers above 1,000

shùbiàn wèn yíxià	by the way (when asking a question)
yǒude	some
yóujú	post office
yóupiào	stamp
xìn	letter
xìnfēng	envelope
xìntǒng	postbox, mailbox

Exercise 1 Now would you like to tell the Chinese something about post offices in Britain?

- You can deposit and withdraw money in a post office.
- Post offices in Britain do not usually open on Saturday afternoons and Sundays.
- Postboxes in Britain are red, not green.
- In Britain, you can't make long distance calls in a post office.



Chinese stamps

Key words and phrases

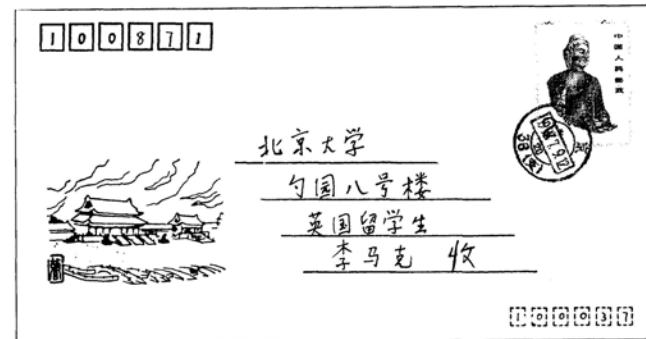
chá	to look up (something)
chāo zhòng le	to have exceeded the weight limit
chèng	scales
chuánzhēn	fax
dào	to go to; to
diànzǐ yóujiàn	e-mail (electronic mail)
dìqū	district
fā	to send (a fax, e-mail, etc.)
fā-wán le	have sent (a fax) through
fàng	to put
fēng	(measure word for letters)
guāngpán	compact disk (CD)
hǎiyùn	(to post) by sea
hángkōng	(to post) by air

hǎokàn	nice-looking
jì dào	to post to
nèibiān	over there
shàng wǎng	to use the internet (lit. on net)
shōujù	receipt
shū	book
tào	set (stamps)
yè	page
yuànyì	would like to, to be willing to
zhàn xiàn	(line) engaged
zhèixiē/nèixiē	these / those
zhuǎn	to change to (extension)

Dialogue 1

Ann is now at a post office in China. At the end of the dialogue she will have done three things. What are they?

- Ann** Qǐng wèn, zhèi fēng xìn jì dào Yīngguó, duōshao qián?
Assistant Qǐng fàng zài chéng shàng. . . Chāo zhòng le. Sān kuài jiǔ.
Ann Jǐ tiān néng dào?
Assistant Bù yídìng. Yībān wǔ, liù tiān. Zhè shì nín de yóupiào.
Ann Zhèi zhāng yóupiào zhēn hǎokàn. Wǒ néng mǎi yí tào ma?
Assistant Dāngrán kěyǐ. Yí tào liù kuài qī.
Ann Wǒ hái xiǎng jì yí ge bāoguǒ.
Assistant Shì shénme dōngxi?
Ann Dōu shì shū hé guāngpán.
Assistant Yě qǐng fàng zài chéng shàng. . . Liǎng gōngjīn. Nín jǐ hángkōng háishi hǎiyùn?
Ann Hángkōng.



i In China, only standardized envelopes with boxes for postcodes may be used (see envelope on previous page). The top left-hand corner is for the addressee's postcode and the bottom right-hand corner for the sender's.

▶ Exercise 2 You are now in a post office talking to the assistant. You begin:

- a **You** (Say *this parcel is for America.*)
Assistant Shì shénme dōngxi?
b **You** (Say *they are all books.*)
Assistant Qǐng fàng zài chènɡ shàng. . . . Yībǎi wǔshísān kuài.
c **You** (Ask *how many days it takes (to get to America).*)
Assistant Bù yíding. Yībān sì, wǔ tiān.
d **You** (Say *you would like to buy postcards and ask how much it is for a set.*)
Assistant Zhèi tào dà de shíliù kuài. Nèi tào xiǎo de shísi kuài wǔ.
e **You** (Say *you'll have a set of the big ones, and two sets of the small ones.*)
Assistant Bāoguǒ yībǎi wǔshísān kuài, yí tào dà de míngxìnpìàn shíliù kuài, liǎng tào xiǎo de èrshíjiǔ kuài, yígòng yībǎi jiǔshíbā kuài.
f **You** (Say *here are 200 kuài.*)
Assistant Zhǎo nín liǎng kuài.
g **You** (Say *thank you and goodbye.*)
Assistant Zàijiàn!

Dialogue 2

Colin zài shāngwù zhōngxīn fā chuánzhēn. (Colin is sending a fax at a *business centre*.)

- Colin** Xiǎojie, qǐng wèn, kěyǐ zài zhè fā (yí) ge chuánzhēn ma?
Assistant Kěyǐ. Fā-dào nǎr?
Colin Déguó.
Assistant Yígòng jǐ yè?
Colin Liǎng yè.
Assistant Hǎo de. Qǐng gěi wǒ chuánzhēn hàomǎ.
Colin Zhè shì chuánzhēn hàomǎ.
Assistant Qǐng dēngyíděng. . . . Fā-wán le. Zhè shì shōujù.
Colin Duōshǎo qián?
Assistant Sìshí kuài. Qǐng dào nèibiān fù qián.
Colin Xièxie nǐ. Shùnbìan wèn yíxià, kěyǐ zài zhè shàng wǎng hé fā diànzǐ yóujiàn ma?
Assistant Dāngrán kěyǐ.

商务中心

Shāngwù zhōngxīn
Business centre

Note that in spoken Chinese, when yī (*one*) occurs with a measure word the yī is often omitted.

▶ Exercise 3 You will find it useful to be able to ask and understand the following questions and instructions in Chinese. Look carefully at the example given in each section and then have a go at translating the English sentences which follow it into Chinese.

a Asking for services:

Example: Qǐng wèn kěyǐ zài zhè fā ge chuánzhēn ma?

Can I make a phone call here?

Can I send a parcel here?

Can I send an e-mail here?

b Asking for items:

Example: Qǐng gěi wǒ tāde chuánzhēn hào(mǎ).

Can I have your telephone number?

Can I have their website address (wǎngzhǐ)?

Can I have your passport?

Can I have their address (dìzhǐ)?

c Giving instructions/directions:

Example: Qǐng dào nèibiān fù qián.

Please change money over there.

Please make the phone call outside (wàibiān).

Qǐng dào hòubiān pái duì (*Please queue at the back*) is another useful instruction you may wish to learn.

Dialogue 3

Xie Qúnyì is making a long-distance call.

- Operator** Nín hǎo. Nánfāng Dàxué.
Xiè Qǐng zhuǎn sì-èr-qī fēnjī.
Operator Duìbuqǐ, sì-èr-qī zhàn xiàn. Nín yuànyì dēngyíděng háishì yìhuìr zài dǎ lái?
Xiè Wǒ zhè shì guójiā diànhuà. Nín néng bu néng jiào sì-èr-qī de Wáng Bǎoping gěi wǒ dǎ ge diànhuà?
Operator Nín de hàomǎ shì duōshǎo?
Xiè Yīngguó Lúndūn shì sì-sì-èr-líng-qī. Wǒ de diànhuà shì èr-yāo-liù qī-qī-jiǔ-èr.
Operator Nín guì xìng?
Xiè Wǒ jiào Xiè Qúnyì.
Operator Méi wèntí.
Xiè Xièxie nín.

You learnt about straightforward telephone numbers in Unit 3, p. 27. If, having got through to the main switchboard, you need to ask for an extension number, such as 473, you say:

Qǐng zhuǎn sī-qī-sān (fēnjī). *Extension 473 please. (lit. invite transfer 4-7-3 branch machine)*

Note the little word **lái** at the end of the operator's second speech in **Dialogue 3**:

Nǐ yuànyì děngyíděng háishi yìhuìr zài dà lái? *Do you wish to wait or phone again in a little while? (lit. you wish wait a little while again hit [the electric speech] come?)*

This use of **lái** indicates direction towards the speaker (see also Unit 12, p. 140).

Exercise 4 Read the dialogue and answer the following questions in English.

- Where is the caller phoning?
- Who does the caller want to speak to?
- Why couldn't the operator connect the caller to the extension he gave her?
- What seemed to be the mistake?

▶ A telephone conversation

Operator Nín hǎo, Héping Bīnguǎn.

Mark Qǐng zhuǎn wǔ-bā-sì fēnjī.

Operator Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen méi yǒu wǔ-bā-sì fēnjī.

Mark Shénme? Méi yǒu wǔ-bā-sì fēnjī?!

Operator Nín yào zhǎo shéi?

Mark Wǒ zhǎo cóng Měiguó lái de Bái Huá xiānsheng.

Operator Tā zhù nǎ ge fángjiān?

Mark Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bu zhīdào.

Operator Qǐng děngyíděng. Wǒ chá yíxià. A, Bái Huá xiānsheng.

Mark Tā zhù wǔ-sì-bā fángjiān. Tā de fēnjī yě shì wǔ-sì-bā.

Mark Duìbuqǐ. Nàme qǐng gěi wǒ zhuǎn yíxià.

公用电话

Gōngyòng diànhuà
Public telephone

It is not difficult to change money in big cities, but it can be difficult in small cities and towns. The following passage tells us one of the reasons.



Huàn qián Changing money

Words in *italics* are explained in the box below.

Zài Zhōngguó huàn qián *mùqián* zhǐ néng zài dà yínháng de fēnháng huàn, *duìhuànlǜ* dōu chàbuduō. Yǒude dà fàndiàn hé dà shāngdiàn yě yǒu huàn qián de dìfang. Yínháng de kāi mén shíjiān gēn pǔtōng de shāngdiàn bù yíyàng, bǐ shāngdiàn kāi mén shíjiān wǎn yìdiǎn, guān mén shíjiān zǎo yìdiǎn. Kěshì, zài dà fàndiàn lǐ de huàn qián de dìfang kāi mén shíjiān bǐjiào *língguó*, *kěnéng* huì kāi-dào hěn wǎn. *Jiānglái*, *qǔkuǎnjī* duō le, *qu* qián gèng fāngbiàn le, jiù bú yòng qù yínháng huàn qián le.

diǎn	<i>to count</i>
duìhuànlǜ	<i>exchange rate</i>
fēnháng	<i>branch (of a bank)</i>
jiānglái	<i>in the future</i>
kěnéng	<i>possible, possibly</i>
língguó	<i>flexible</i>
mùqián	<i>at present, currently</i>
qǔkuǎnjī	<i>ATM (automatic teller machine)</i>
zhènghǎo	<i>just right (amount)</i>

Exercise 5 Respond with **duì** or **bú duì** to the following statements about the passage above.

- | | duì | bú duì |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| a One can change money at any bank in China. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b You can change money in some big hotels. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c The opening hours of banks in China are different from those of ordinary shops. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d The opening hours of Bureaux de Change in big hotels are the same as at banks in the high street. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

měiyuán	US dollar	yīngbàng	UK pound
riyuán	Japanese yen	gǎngbì	HK dollar
ōuyuán	euro	rénmínbì	Chinese yuan

Numbers above 1,000

1,000	yìqiān	100,000	shíwàn (ten wàns)
10,000	yíwàn	480,000	sìshíbā wàn
20,000	èr/liǎng wàn	1,000,000	yībǎi wàn
35,000	sānwàn wǔqiān		(100 wàns)

9 × 1,000 = jiǔqiān
but 10 × 1,000 = yíwàn

There is no specific word for one million. It is *100 wàns!* Two million is therefore *200 wàns*, and so on.

Dialogue 4

The customer in the dialogue below wants to change some money. First he will have to fill out a **duìhuàndān** (*exchange memo*). Figures can be difficult to understand, so listen to the dialogue a few times and concentrate on the figures. What currency does the customer wish to exchange for **rénmínbì**? What is the exchange rate? How much does he want to change?

Customer	Qǐng wèn, jīntiān měiyuán hé rénminbì de duìhuànlǚ shì duōshao?
Teller	Yí bǐ bā diǎnr jiǔ.
Customer	Yí měiyuán huàn bā kuài jiǔ, duì ma?
Teller	Duì.
Customer	Wǒ xiǎng huàn liǎngbǎi měiyuán de rénminbì.
Teller	Qīng xiān tián zhèi zhāng duìhuàndān.
Customer	... Tián-hǎo le. Zhè shì liǎngbǎi měiyuán.
Teller	Qīng dēngyidēng. ... Zhè shì yìqiān qībǎi bāshí kuài. Qīng diǎnyidiǎn.
Customer	Zhènghǎo. Xièxie nǐ.
Teller	Bú kèqì.

Exercise 6 How would you ask for the exchange rate of the following currency against **rénmínbì yuán**?

Example: (Jīntiān) rìyuán hé rénminbì de duìhuànlǚ shì duōshao?

- | | |
|---------|------------|
| a £ | c HK \$ |
| b US \$ | d € (euro) |

Exercise 7 Now ask again for the exchange rates in Exercise 6 and this time give the answer according to the table below. Try to use both expressions used in **Dialogue 4** for talking about the rates. (Leave out this exercise if you don't like working with figures.)

- Example:* 10,000 (Japanese) yen
i Yíwàn (rìyuán) bǐ qībǎi bāshí'èr (kuài rénminbì)
ii Yíwàn rìyuán huàn qībǎi bāshí'èr kuài rénminbì.

Foreign currencies	Rénmínbì (yuán)
US \$ 100.00	850.00
HK \$ 100.00	108.00
£ 100.00	1320.00
euro € 100.00	910.00

Exercise 8 You want to change the following amount of currency into **RMB yuán**. What would you say?

Example: 75,000 rìyuán
Wǒ xiǎng huàn qīwàn wǔqiān rìyuán de rénminbì.

- | | |
|------------|--------------|
| a £100 | d 60,000 yen |
| b US \$200 | e €400 |
| c HK \$500 | |

Quick review

How do you ask or say the following?

- How much is it to post this postcard to Britain?
- I want to buy a set of stamps.
- What's the exchange rate between sterling and RMB today?
- I want to change £150 for RMB.
- My extension is 2115.

16

being a guest
zuò kè

In this unit you will learn

- how to make a toast
- how to make appropriate remarks and responses during a meal

Revise before you start

- when ... (10)
- eat (7)
- measure words (4)(7)
- polite talk (4)(8)
- eat ... le (7)
- use of háishi (6)
- verb endings (10)
- duō + verb (10)
- use of de after verb (8)
- yǐjīng (*already*) + le (10)
- not any more (10)
- gěi (*for*) (6)
- verb + guo (9)

No doubt you have eaten Chinese meals. But where? At a Chinese home or in a Chinese restaurant? Or both? Have you noticed some of the differences in the way Westerners and Chinese eat their meals? Now read the following passage which brings up some of the differences in simple Chinese.

Chi Zhōngguó fàn *Eating Chinese food*

Zhōngguó-rén chángcháng wèi kèrén zuò hěn duō cài. Tāmen xiǎng kèrén duō hē jiǔ, duō chī cài.

Zhōngguó-rén hé Xīfāng-rén chī fàn de xíguàn bù yíyàng. Dàbùfen Zhōngguó-rén yìbān xiān chī fàn, hòu hē tāng. Zài Wítāng, rénmen yìbān xiān hē tāng, hòu chī fàn. Zhōngguó-rén chángcháng xiān hē jiǔ, chī liáng cài, ránhòu chī rè fàn, rè cài, suǒhòu chī shuǐguǒ. Xīfāng-rén xiān chī tóupán, ránhòu chī zhōngcān, zuǐhòu chī tiānshí huò shuǐguǒ. Zhōngguó-rén chī fàn yòng wǎn hé kuàizi; Xīfāng-rén chī fàn yòng pánzi hé dāochā.

Zhōngguó-rén zài jiā lǐ chī fàn hé zài fānguǎn chī fàn chàbuduō, dàjiā yìqǐ chī suǒyǒude cài. Xīfāng-rén zài fānguǎn zìjǐ chī zìjǐ de cài. Zài jiā chī fàn de shíhou, bùtóng de cài xiān fàng zài pán lǐ, suǒhòu cái chī.

Key words and phrases

bùtóng de	<i>different</i>
chángcháng	<i>often</i>
dàbùfen	<i>majority</i>
dàjiā	<i>everyone</i>
dāochā (i.e. dāozi, chāzi)	<i>knife (and) fork</i>
hòu	<i>later</i>
huò(zhě)	<i>or (used in statements)</i>
jiǔ	<i>alcohol</i>

liáng	cold, cool
rénmen	people (in general)
shuǐguǒ	fruit
suǒyǒude	all
tiánshí	dessert
tóupán	starter
wèi	for (formal)
Xīfāng	West
xíguàn	habit, customs
xīwàng	to hope; hope
zhèngcān	main course
zìjǐ chī zìjǐ de	to eat one's own
zuihòu	last

We mentioned the enormous difference between spoken and written Chinese in Unit 14, p. 155 and there are further examples of this in the passage above. **Wèi** is used instead of **gěi** in the first sentence, **hòu** is used instead of **ránhòu** in the fourth sentence (p. 175) and **huò** is used instead of **huòzhě** in the seventh sentence (p. 175). Using one-syllable words instead of two, or using a more 'ancient' word (**wèi** instead of **gěi**) gives a more formal feel to the language.

Note that **dōu** (*all*) can only be used in front of a verb. So, for example, when you want to say *all people* you have to use another word for *all* which is **suǒyǒude**:

- Tā xīhuan **suǒyǒude** rén. *She likes everybody*
(*lit.* all people).
- Dàjiā yìqǐ chī **suǒyǒude** cài. *Everybody shares all the dishes*
(*lit.* big family together eat all dish).

Exercise 1 Choose the most appropriate words from the ones given in brackets to fill the blanks in the sentences below. You will be able to use all the words given in **a** and **b** but you will have to make a choice in **c**, **d** and **e**.

- a** Zhōngguó-rén yìbān xiān _____, ránhòu _____, zuìhòu _____.
(hē tāng, chī rè fàn, rè cài, hē jiǔ)
- b** Xīfāng-rén yìbān xiān _____, ránhòu _____, zuìhòu _____.
(chī shuǐguǒ, hē tāng, chī zhèngcān)
- c** Zhōngguó-rén chī fàn yòng ___ hé ____.
(dāozi, kuàizi, chāzi, pánzi, wǎn)

- d** Xīfāng-rén chī fàn yòng ___ gēn ____.
(dāochā, kuàizi, pánzi, wǎn)
- e** _____ zài fānguǎnr chī fàn hé zài jiā lǐ chī fàn xíguàn yíyàng.
(Zhōngguó-rén; Xīfāng-rén)

Key words and phrases

ài	to love, to like very much; love
báijiǔ	strong alcohol
chá	tea
chī-bu-xià le	to be unable to eat any more
chúfáng	kitchen
Gān bēi!	Cheers!
gān yì bēi	to have a drink
hǎochī (de)	delicious (food), tasty
hé	box
hē-bu-liǎo	to be unable to drink
hē-bu-xià le	to be unable to drink any more
huānyíng	to welcome; welcome
huí qù	to go back
jiǎcháng biànfàn	simple home meal
kètīng	sitting room
kètīng lǐ zuò ba	come and sit in the sitting room
màn zǒu	take care (as in goodbye; <i>lit.</i> walk slowly)
píjiǔ	beer
qiǎokèlì	chocolates
shìqing	matter, thing
shūshu	uncle (on father's side or someone of his generation)
tián (de)	sweet
wàiguó	foreign country
wàiguó-rén	foreigner
xiàndàihuà (de)	modern
xiāng	fragrant
zuò kè	to be a guest
zuǒshǒu	left hand
gōngzuò shùnlǐ	<i>lit.</i> work smooth
Lùshàng xiǎoxīn.	Have a safe journey (<i>lit.</i> on the road (be) careful)
quánjiā xìngfú	<i>lit.</i> whole family happy
shēnghuó yúkuài	<i>lit.</i> life pleasant
wànshì rúyì	<i>lit.</i> ten thousand things as you wish

Gěi nǐ(men) tiān máfan le.	Sorry to have troubled you.
Nà jiù bù liú nǐ le.	I won't keep you then.
Nǐ tài kèqì le.	You are being too polite.
Wèi . . . gān bēi!	To . . . (used as a toast).
Wǒ chī/hē-bu-xià le.	I can't eat / drink any more.
Wǒ gāi huí qù le.	I must be off now.
Wǒ sòngsong nǐ.	I'll see you out.
Wǒ zìjǐ lái.	I'll help myself.

Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Mr White, who is called Lǎo Bái by his Chinese friends, is invited to dinner at the Yuáns' home. Read the dialogue and note how Mr White presents his gifts to the family.

Mr Yuán	Lǎo Bái, huānyíng, huānyíng.
Lǎo Bái	Lǎo Yuán, nǐ hǎo. Wǒ zhīdao nǐ ài hē jiǔ. Zhè shì gěi nǐde jiǔ.
Mr Yuán	Fǎguó pútáojiǔ! Nǐ tài kèqì le.
Lǎo Bái	Zhèi hé qiǎokèlì shì gěi nǐmen nǚ'ér de.
Mr Yuán	Zhēn Zhēn, kuài xièxie Bái shūshu.
Zhēn Zhēn	Xièxie Bái shūshu.
Lǎo Bái	Bú yòng xiè. . . Zhēn xiāng a! Yuán tàitai, zuò shénme hǎochī de ne?
Mrs Yuán	Méi shénme hǎochī de. Dōu shì jiācháng biànfàn.
Lǎo Bái	Nǐmen de chúfáng tǐng xiàndàihuà de.
Mrs Yuán	Kěxī tài xiǎo le.
Mr Yuán	Lǎo Bái, kètīng lǐ zuò ba.
Lǎo Bái	Hǎo, hǎo. Nǐmen de kètīng zhēn piàoliang.
Mr Yuán	Nǎli, nǎli. Lǎo Bái, nǐ xiǎng hē diǎnr shénme?
Lǎo Bái	Hē diǎnr chá ba.

Note the various examples of *kèqì huà* (polite talk), which was referred to in Unit 8, p. 90, in the dialogue above and in Dialogues 2 and 3.

i It is quite usual to take off your shoes when going into other people's houses or flats and your host will usually provide some *tuōxié* (slip-ons, *lit.* drag shoes) for you.

Exercise 2 The two patterns overleaf are often used when giving something to somebody. You will need a *measure word* (MW) in pattern ii:

- i / Zhè shì gěi nǐ de X. This is an X for you.
 ii / Zhè MW X shì gěi nǐ de. This MW X is for you.

You have brought with you the following things as presents when invited to dinner with a Chinese family. How would you present them? Try to use both i and ii patterns.

Example: Zhè shì gěi nǐ de huà.
 Zhè fú huà shì gěi nǐ de.



(hé)



(hé)



(běn)



(píng)



(zhāng)



(fú)

Exercise 3 Now use the presents and the patterns in Exercise 2, but this time you've bought them for different people.

Example: my father, painting
 Zhè shì gěi wǒ bàba de huà.
 Zhè fú huà shì gěi wǒ bàba de.

- my elder sister, chocolates
- his wife, a tin of green tea
- her uncle, a book
- her boyfriend, a bottle of wine
- their company (gōngsī), a painting
- your (pl) friends, two film tickets

四海为家

Chinese proverb: Sì hǎi wéi jiā
(lit. Four seas like home)

▶ Dialogue 2

The following dialogue is between Mr White and his Chinese hosts, Mr and Mrs Yuán, during a meal. Listen out for the kèqì huà.

- Mr Yuán** Lǎo Bái, zánmen xiān hē yì bēi.
Lǎo Bái Hǎo a.
Mr Yuán Nǐ hē píjiǔ, pútáojiǔ háishi lái diǎnr báijiǔ.
Lǎo Bái Báijiǔ wǒ hē-bu-liǎo. Hē diǎnr pútáojiǔ ba.
Mr Yuán Bái de háishi hóng de?
Lǎo Bái Hóng de ba.
Mr Yuán Zhèi zhǒng jiǔ bù tián. Wǒ zhīdao wàiguó-rén yìbān bù xihuān hē tián de jiǔ.
Lǎo Bái Shì, wǒ bù xīhuan hē tián de jiǔ.
Mr Yuán Zánmen xiān gān yì bēi. Zhù nǐ gōngzuò shùnlì, shēnghuó yúkuài!
Lǎo Bái Zhù nimen quánjiā xìngfú, wànshì rúyì!
Mr Yuán Gān bēi!
Lǎo Bái Gān bēi!
Mrs Yuán Bié kèqì, duō chī diǎnr.
Lǎo Bái Hǎo, hǎo, wǒ zìjǐ lái.
Lǎo Bái Cài dōu fēicháng hǎochī.
Mr Yuán Zài duō chī diǎnr.
Lǎo Bái Wǒ yǐjīng chī-bǎo le.
Mrs Yuán Nǐ chī-de tài shǎo le.
Lǎo Bái Wǒ zhēnde chī-bu-xià le.
Mr Yuán Nǐ tài kèqì le.
Lǎo Bái Wǒ méi kèqì.

More examples of useful four-character phrases can be found in Unit 14, pp. 160–1).

Zhù nǐ(men) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{gōngzuò shùnlì!} \\ \text{shēnghuó yúkuài!} \\ \text{quánjiā xìngfú!} \end{array} \right. \begin{array}{l} \text{May your work go smoothly!} \\ \text{May your life be happy!} \\ \text{May your whole family be} \\ \text{blessed!} \end{array}$

i **Gān bēi** (*Drain your glass*) does not have to be taken literally, particularly in the case of 70 per cent proof **máotái** which is often used for toasts at banquets!

▶ **Exercise 4** The following are some useful expressions which might come in handy when you are having dinner with a Chinese family. Do you know how to say them in Chinese?

- Cheers!
- I really can't eat any more.
- It smells nice.
- I'll help myself.
- Wishing you every happiness.

▶ Dialogue 3

Read the dialogue and note carefully the exchanges between the guest and his hosts.

- Lǎo Bái** Wǒ kěyǐ yòng yíxià nǐmende cèsuǒ ma?
Mr Yuán Zuǒshǒu dì-èr jiān jiù shì.
Lǎo Bái Oh, yǐjīng jiǔ diǎn duō le. Wǒ gāi huí qù le.
Mr Yuán Hái zǎo ne. Zài zuò yíhuìr ba.
Lǎo Bái Bú zuò le. Míngtiān zǎoshang wǒ hái yǒu shìqing.
Mr Yuán Hǎo ba. Nà jiù bù liú nǐ le.
Lǎo Bái Gěi nimen tiān máfan le.
Mr Yuán Méi shénme. Huānyíng nǐ zài lái.
Lǎo Bái Yídìng, yídìng.
Mr Yuán Wǒ sòngsong nǐ.
Lǎo Bái Bú yòng le. Qǐng huí qù ba.
Mr Yuán Mǎn zǒu.
Mrs Yuán Lùshàng xiǎoxīn.
Lǎo Bái Méi wèntí. Zàijiàn!
Mr & Mrs Yuán Zàijiàn!

Exercise 5 What do you say?

- What do you say when you think it's time to leave?
- How might your host respond if he/she doesn't want you to leave yet?
- How do you thank your host for all the trouble s/he has taken?
- What's your host's response to c?
- What do you say when your host suggests seeing you off?
- How do you tell somebody to take care driving or cycling?
- What's the common parting remark made by the host to his/her guest?

▶ Dialogue 4

The following is a dialogue between a Chinese managing director, his wife and his foreign counterpart of a joint venture. They are at a banquet. Listen to the recording, and try to answer the following questions before you read the dialogue. Or read

the dialogue and then answer the questions. This time the new words and expressions come after the dialogue, and we've given you the English translation of the questions.

Questions

- a Bái xiānsheng kuàizi yòng-de zěnmeyàng?
Does Mr White use chopsticks very well?
- b Tā shuō tā Zhōngguó fàn zuò-de hǎo bu hǎo?
How well does he say he cooks?
- c Tā chángcháng qù nǎr chī Zhōngguó fàn?
Where does he often go for Chinese meals?
- d Duihuà (dialogue) lǐ shuō Bái xiānsheng chī-guo/hē-guo shénme?
i yànwō tāng
ii Máotáijiǔ
iii fèngzhǎo
According to the dialogue which of the following has Mr White ever eaten/drank?
i birds' nest soup
ii Máotái
iii chicken feet

- Dǒngshìzhǎng** Bái xiānsheng, nín kuàizi yòng-de zhēn hǎo.
Mr White Wǒ chángcháng chī Zhōngguó fàn.
Fūren Nín zìjǐ zuò fàn ma?
Mr White Wǒ zuò-de bù hǎo. Wǒ cháng qù Zhōngguóchéng de fànguǎnr chī fàn.
Dǒngshìzhǎng Lái, xiān hē yì bēi. Zhè shì Máotáijiǔ. Nín hē-guo ma?
Mr White Hē-guo liǎng cì.
Dǒngshìzhǎng Wèi wǒmen liǎng ge gōngsī de chénggōng hézuò gān bēi!
Mr White Wèi Dǒngshìzhǎng hé Dǒngshìzhǎng fūren de jiànkāng gān bēi!
Fūren Zhè shì yànwō tāng, fēicháng yǒu yíngyǎng.
Mr White Wǒ tīngshuō-guo, kěshì méi hē-guo.
Dǒngshìzhǎng Zhè shì fèngzhǎo, bù zhīdao nín chī-guo ma?
Mr White Kàn-jiàn-guo, hái méi chī-guo.
Fūren Zhènghǎo, qǐng chángchang ba.
Fūren Duō chī diǎnr cài.
Dǒngshìzhǎng Zài hē yì bēi.
Mr White Wǒ chī-bu-xià le, yě hē-bu-xià le.
Dǒngshìzhǎng Zài hē zuihòu yì bēi. Wèi Zhōng-Yīng liǎng guó rénmin de yǒuyì gān bēi!
Mr White Gān bēi! Xīwàng nimen yǒu jīhuì qù Yīngguó fāngwèn.

Key words and phrases

cháng (chang)	to taste
chángcháng	often
chénggōng	successful
dǒngshìzhǎng	managing director
fāngwèn	visit (formal)
fèngzhǎo	chicken feet
fūren	wife (formal), madam
gōngsī	company
hézuò	co-operation, co-operate
jiànkāng	health, healthy
jīhuì	opportunity
kàn-jiàn	to see
Máotái(jiǔ)	Maotai (a very strong Chinese spirit)
yànwō	birds' nest
yǒu yíngyǎng	nutritious
Zhōngguóchéng	Chinatown
Zhōng-Yīng liǎng guó rénmin de yǒuyì	The friendship between the Chinese and British peoples
liǎng guó rénmin	two countries
yǒuyì	the people (of a country)
zuò (fàn)	friendship
	to cook

Exercise 6 Look at the Chinese words in the left-hand column and pair each of them with one in the right-hand column.

- | | |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| a fāngwèn | i co-operate, co-operation |
| b hézuò | ii madam |
| c jīhuì | iii to visit, visit (formal) |
| d fūren | iv success, successful |
| e gōngsī | v opportunity |
| f chénggōng | vi company |

Exercise 7 The words in Exercise 6 are some of the words you might need in formal business encounters.

Now cover up the Chinese and just look at the English. Can you remember how to say them in Chinese?

You met **zhè/zhèi** (*this*) and **nà/nèi** (*that*) in Unit 2 and **nǎ/něi** (*which?*) in Unit 7. They are normally followed by a measure word (see Unit 7). By putting the collective measure word **xié**

after zhè/zhèi, nà/nèi and nǎ/něi you have zhèxiē/zhèixiē (*these*), nàxiē/nèixiē (*those*) and nǎxiē/něixiē (*which? plural*):

zhèxiē (shū)	<i>these (books)</i>
nàxiē (cài)	<i>those (dishes)</i>
nǎxiē (jīhuì)	<i>which (opportunities)?</i>

Polite forms of address

The formal way of addressing a married woman in Chinese is **fūren** and not **tàitai**. Chinese speakers often translate **fūren** as *madam*:

Chén fūren *Madam Chen*

When writing in English, a Chinese speaker may well address his or her letter to Madam Jones which seems rather strange to most English speakers. **Fūren** can also be put after titles which carry a certain status such as manager or headmaster and can refer to female postholders' or to male postholders' *wives*:

Dǒngshìzhǎng fūren	<i>Madam Manager (used in Mr White's toast)</i>
Xiàozhǎng fūren	<i>Madam Headmaster</i>

Quick review

When you hear these toasts, do you know what they mean?

- Zhù nǐ shēntǐ jiànkāng!
- Zhù nǐ shēnghuó yúkuài!
- Zhù nǐ wànshì rúyì!
- Zhù nǐ gōngzuò shùnlì!
- Zhù nǐ chénggōng!
- Wèi wǒmen de yóuyì gān bēi!
- Wèi wǒmen de hézuò gān bēi!



seeing a doctor
kàn yīshēng

- In this unit you will learn
- how to describe symptoms to the doctor or the pharmacist
 - to understand the instructions on the medicine bottle
 - about acupuncture, Chinese herbal medicine, tàijiquán and qìgōng

Revise before you start

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| • measure words (4)(7) | • verb + guo (9) |
| • both ... and ... (9) | • use of ba (3) |
| • yǒu yidiǎnr (<i>a bit</i>) (8) | • on + noun (5) |
| • sentences ending in le (4) | • when ... (10) |
| • verb + le (9) | • bié (<i>don't</i>) (10) |
| • shì bu shì (3) | • gěi (<i>for</i>) (6) |
| • use of háishi (6) | |

Zhōngguó de Yīliáo *Medical care in China*

The Chinese medical system is not the same as in Britain. The following passage tells us a little about some of the differences. (Words in *italics* are explained in the box below.)

Zài Zhōngguó, hěn duō dānwèi yǒu zìjǐ de yīwùsuǒ. Xiǎo de yīwùsuǒ zhǐ yǒu yí gè yīshēng, dà de kěyǐ yǒu jǐ ge yīshēng hé hùshi. Rúguǒ nǐ yǒu bìng, nǐ kěyǐ qù dānwèi de yīwùsuǒ, yě kěyǐ zhíjiē qù yīyuàn.

Zhōngguó de yīyuàn yìbān fēnchéng bùtóng de kē. Yǒude yīyuàn shì zhuānkē yīyuàn, zhǐ kàn yì, liáng zhōng bìng. Dà de yīyuàn yìbān yǒu Zhōngyī, yòu yǒu Xīyī. Nǐ kěyǐ kàn Zhōngyī, yě kěyǐ kàn Xīyī.

bing	illness
bìngrén	patient
dānwèi	work unit
fēnchéng	to divide / to be divided into
hùshi	nurse
jǐ	several, a few
kàn bìng	to see a doctor (to have the illness looked at)
kē	department (in a hospital)
Xīyī	Western medical (doctor); Western medicine
yīliáo	medical care
yīshēng	doctor
yīwùsuǒ	clinic (attached to a work unit)
yīyuàn	hospital
zhíjiē	direct(ly)
zhǒng	kind, sort (measure word)
Zhōngyī	Chinese medical (doctor); Chinese medicine
zhuānkē	specialized; speciality ...

Exercise 1 According to the above passage, are the following statements *duì* or *bú duì*?

- | | duì | bú duì |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| a. Yǒude dānwèi méi yǒu yīwùsuǒ. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b. Zài dà de yīyuàn, Zhōngyī, Xīyī dōu yǒu. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c. Yǒude yīwùsuǒ méi yǒu hùshi. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d. Bìngrén bù kěyǐ zhíjiē qù yīyuàn. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Key words and phrases

bú xiè	not at all
cānjiā	to attend
chī (yào)	to take (medicine)
dùzi	stomach, tummy
lā dùzi	to have diarrhoea
fàn hòu	after meals
fàn qián	before meals
fúyòng fāngfǎ	instructions (for taking medicine)
gǎnmào	to have a cold
Hànzi	Chinese characters
kāfēi	coffee
kāishuǐ	boiled water
késou	cough
kǔ	bitter
lì	pill; MW for pill-sized pieces, e.g. grain
ná	to take, fetch
piàn(r)	tablet; MW for small slices, e.g. snowflakes
píngzi	bottle
téng	painful; pain
tóuténg	headache
wán(r)	(Chinese medicine) ball
wēn	warm
Xīyào	Western medicine
yànhuì	banquet
yào	medicine
yàofāng	prescription
yàofáng	pharmacy
yìxiē	some
yǒu shíhòu	sometimes
yǒu xiào	effective
zhā	to pierce, to put in a needle, to do acupuncture

zhēnjiū	acupuncture
zhěnsuǒ	clinic (open to the general public)
zhèyàng/zhèiyàng	like this, in this way
Zhōngyào	Chinese medicine
Wǒ bù shūfu.	I don't feel well.
Wǒ . . . téng.	My . . . hurts.
Wǒde tiān a!	Good heavens! (lit. my heaven)

Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Mr White is not feeling at all well. He decides to go to the company's clinic. Listen to the dialogue and try to find out what's wrong with him. What does he think has caused the problem, and what does the doctor think the cause is? What medicine does the doctor prescribe?

Yīshēng	Nǐ nǎr bù shūfu?
Bái	Wǒ dùzi bù shūfu.
Yīshēng	Lā dùzi ma?
Bái	Yǒu yidiǎnr.
Yīshēng	Nǐ zuótiān chī shénme le?
Bái	Wǒ cānjiā le yí ge yànhuì, chī le fèngzhǎo, hē le yànwǒ tāng.
Yīshēng	Nèixiē dōu shì hào dōngxī, duì nǐ shēntǐ hǎo.
Bái	Wǒ kěnéng chī-de tài duō le.
Yīshēng	Nǐ hē le hěn duō jiǔ, shì bu shì?
Bái	Bù duō, zhǐ hē le bā bēi.
Yīshēng	Wǒ míngbai le. Wǒ gěi nǐ yìxiē yào. Nǐ yuànyì shìshì Zhōngyào ma?
Bái	Wǒ méi chī-guo Zhōngyào. Tīngshuō Zhōngyào hěn kǔ, shì ma?
Yīshēng	Yǒude kǔ, yǒude bù kǔ. Wǒ gěi nǐ de yào bù kǔ.
Bái	Nà wǒ shìshì ba.
Yīshēng	Zhè shì yàofāng. Qǐng dào yàofáng qù ná yào.
Bái	Yīshēng, xièxie nín.
Yīshēng	Bú yòng xiè.

首都医院

Shōudū yīyuàn
Capital hospital

急诊室

Jízhěnsì
Emergency room

Exercise 2 You have a cold, which is a common illness in China as well, and you're seeing a Chinese doctor. Complete the following dialogue.

Yīshēng	Nǐ zěnmē le?
You	(Tell her that you have a headache.)
Yīshēng	Hái yǒu nǎr bù shūfu?
You	(Say you cough a bit.)
Yīshēng	Wǒ xiǎng nǐ yǒu yìdiǎnr gǎnmào.
You	(Say you also feel it's a cold.)
Yīshēng	Wǒ gěi nǐ diǎnr yào. Nǐ chī Zhōngyào ma?
You	(Say you've never taken it before and ask the doctor if Chinese medicine is effective.)
Yīshēng	Yíding yǒu xiào.
You	(Say it's OK and you will give it a try.)

Dialogue 2

Mr White is at the pharmacy.

Pharmacist	Zhè shì nín de yào.
Mr White	Zěnmē chī ya?
Pharmacist	Píngzǐ shàng yǒu fúyòng fāngfǎ.
Mr White	Duibuqǐ, wǒ hái bú rènshi Hànzì.
Pharmacist	O. Duibuqǐ. Wǒ gàosù nǐ. Yì tiān chī sān cì, yí cì chī èrshí lì.
Mr White	Shénme? Yì tiān chī liùshí lì?!
Pharmacist	Duì.
Mr White	Wǒde tiān a!
Pharmacist	Chī yào de shíhou bú yào hē kāfēi, chá hé jiǔ. Yīnggāi hē wēn kāishuǐ.
Mr White	Wèishénme?
Pharmacist	Chī yào dōu yīnggāi zhèyàng.
Mr White	Wǒde yào fàn qián chī háishì fàn hòu chī?
Pharmacist	Dōu kényǐ.
Mr White	Xièxie nín.
Pharmacist	Bú xiè.

You have seen that 'time when' expressions such as *Tuesday, 9 o'clock*, come before the verb (Unit 1, p. 8) and that 'time during which' expressions such as *how long you do something*, for, come after the verb (Unit 9, p. 102).

药房

Yàofáng Pharmacy

Time *within* which something happens comes *before* the verb:

Wǒ yì tiān chī liǎng cì. I eat twice (*in*) a day.
Yì tiān yào chī liùshí li. (You) have to take (*lit. eat*)
60 pills (*in*) a day.

Fàn qián is a more formal way of saying *chī fàn yǐqián* (*before a meal – lit. eat cooked rice before*) and *fàn hòu* of saying *chī fàn yǐhòu* (*after a meal – lit. eat cooked rice after*). Note that (*yǐ*)qián and (*yǐ*)hòu go after the noun in Chinese, the reverse of the English word order.

Instructions for taking Chinese medicine are given in the reverse of the way they are usually given in English-speaking countries. The normal word order in Chinese is:

fàn qián/hòu	meal before/after
yì tiān	per day
jǐ cì	how many times
yí cì chī X li/piàn/wán(r)	every time eat X pills/tablets/ balls

Chinese medicine sometimes comes in the form of small balls which you have to chew. This is not all unpleasant (they are often flavoured with liquorice), but this form of medicine is not so commonly found in Chinese herbal medicine shops in the West catering for Westerners. The Chinese seem to believe that Westerners prefer to take pills!

Exercise 3 Read the instructions about taking the following medicines. Indicate whether each medicine is to be taken before or after meals and fill in the gaps (two per line).

- | | |
|---|---|
| a | before/after meal; ___ times a day; take ___ every time |
| b | before/after meal; ___ times a day; take ___ every time |
| c | before/after meal; ___ times a day; take ___ every time |
| d | before/after meal; ___ times a day; take ___ every time |

- Zhèi zhǒng Zhōngyào fàn qián chī, yì tiān liǎng cì, yí cì yì wánr.
- Zhèi ge yào fàn hòu chī, yì tiān chī sì cì, yí cì chī sān piàn.
- Nèi ge yào bú yào fàn qián chī. Fàn hòu yí ge xiǎoshí zài chī. Yì tiān chī sān cì, yí cì hē yì sháo (*tablespoon*).
- Zhè ge yào zǎoshang chī yí cì, wǎnshang chī yí cì. Yí cì chī liǎng, sān piàn.

服用方法

Fúyòng fāngfǎ
Instructions for taking (the) medicine

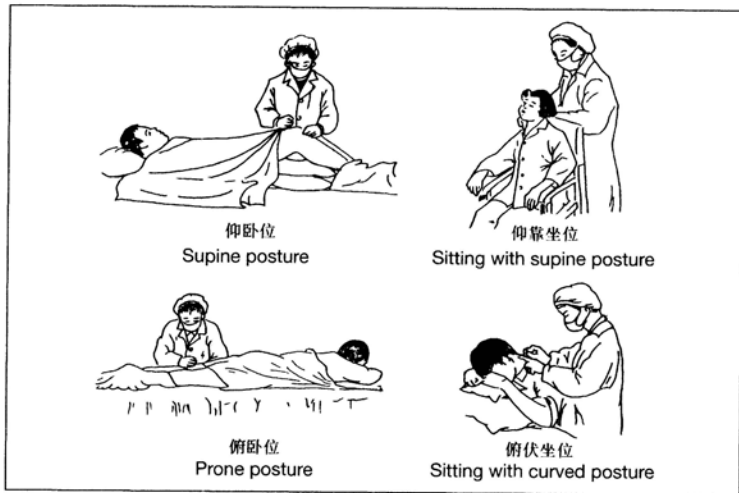
Dialogue 3

The following dialogue is between a Westerner visiting a Chinese clinic and a Chinese doctor working at the clinic. Before reading the dialogue, listen to the recording and try **Exercise 4** first. You can then check your answers when you read it.

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| Visitor | Nǐmen zhěnsuǒ bìngrén duō ma? |
| Doctor | Bù shǎo. |
| Visitor | Nǐmen dōu kàn shénme bìng? |
| Doctor | Gèzhǒng gèyàng de bìng. Nǐ kàn, zhèi ge bìngrén chángcháng tóu téng. Tā kàn-guo Xīyī, chī-guo Xīyào, kěshì hái bù hǎo. Wǒmen gěi tā zhā le zhēnjiǔ, xiànzài tā hǎo duōle. |
| Visitor | Zhēnde? Wǒ yě yǒu shíhou tóu téng. Tā zhā le jǐ cì le? |
| Doctor | Sì cì le. |
| Visitor | Zhēnjiǔ shì bu shì hěn téng? |
| Doctor | Zhēnjiǔ shì bù shūfu, kěshì chángcháng hěn yǒu xiào. |
| Visitor | Zhēnde ma? |
| Doctor | Nǐ yǒu shénme bìng? Wǒ kěyǐ gěi nǐ zhā. |
| Visitor | Bú yòng, bú yòng, wǒ méi bìng. Wǒde shēntǐ hěn hǎo. Xièxie nín. |

Exercise 4 Select the correct answer to complete the statements which are based on **Dialogue 3**.

- There are ___ patients visiting the clinic. (*a lot, quite a few, few*)
- The clinic treats ___ illnesses. (*all sorts of, some, one or two kinds of*)
- The patient being treated in the clinic often has _____. (*diarrhoea, headaches, stomach ache*)
- The visitor declined the offer of acupuncture because he _____. (*was scared, had no illness, did not have the time*)



When two 'le's occur in the same sentence, as in the visitor's 3rd line in **Dialogue 3**, one after the verb and one at the end of the sentence, they convey the idea that the action of the verb is still going on:

(Nǐ gěi) tā zhā le jǐ cì
(zhēnjiǔ) le?

Tā zài Lúndūn zhù le sān
nián le.

*How many times have you
given her acupuncture (so far)?
He's been living in London for
three years (and still is).*

By putting **shì** in front of a verb or adjective you emphasize it:

Zhēnjiǔ **shì** bu shūfu.
Xiě Hànzì **shì** hěn nán.

*Acupuncture is uncomfortable.
Writing Chinese characters is
difficult.*

i To the Chinese way of thinking, each individual (and on a much larger scale the universe) is made up of **yīn** (the female or passive/negative principle) and **yáng** (the male or active/positive principle). To enjoy good health your **yīn** and **yáng** must be in balance. Chinese medicine seeks to redress any imbalance that exists.



Exercise 5 When a part of your body aches, you say **Wò(de) _____ téng**.

If you feel uncomfortable somewhere, you may say **Wò(de) _____ bù shūfu**.

If you don't know the Chinese word for the part of body you want to refer to, you can simply point at the place and say **Wǒ zhèr (here) téng**, or **Wǒ zhèr bù shūfu**.

Now practise these two patterns using the different parts of the body in turn (the Chinese for them is given in the drawing). You are answering the doctor's question **Nǐ nǎr bù shūfu?** So for the back you would say:

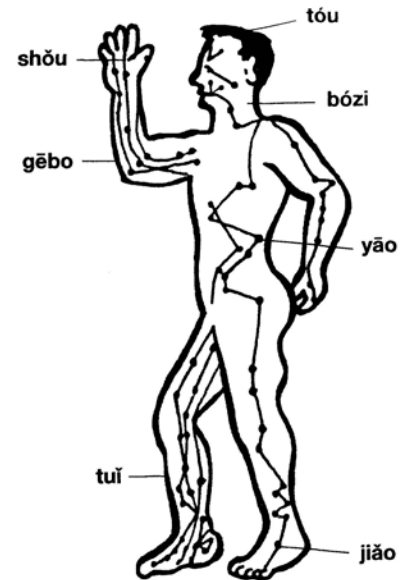
Wǒ yāo téng, or
Wǒ yāo bù shūfu.

i Acupuncture is an ancient Chinese method of treating disease. It is based on the theory that the human body has a whole series of meridians up and down it through which your **qì** (sometimes written **ch'i** in the West) (vital energy) flows.

Having made his/her diagnosis, the acupuncturist inserts fine needles at various points (which all have different names) in your meridians to clear any blockages to your **qì**.

Some conditions seem to respond particularly well to acupuncture – rheumatoid-arthritis, gynaecological problems and the after-effects of strokes to mention just a few.

Why not be brave and try acupuncture treatment yourself if you suffer from a long-standing condition that has not improved with conventional methods? But be sure to go to a reputable acupuncturist who is accredited or better still ask your GP or enquire at your local health shop to see if they can recommend someone.



Exercise 6 Find the Chinese equivalents in Section B to match the English sentences in Section A. Then put the Chinese sentences in the same order as the English sentences and you'll see a short passage about **qìgōng** in Chinese.

Section A:

- a There are all kinds of qigong.
- b Many people believe that qigong can cure all sorts of illness.
- c Qigong is very popular nowadays in China.
- d It's good for your health to do qigong very often.
- e Both Tai Chi and qigong are slow forms of exercise.
- f Some forms (of qigong) are not difficult (to practise); some are not easy.

Section B:

- i Xiànzài zài Zhōngguó, zuò qìgōng hěn liúxíng.
- ii Yǒude qìgōng bù nán, yǒude hǎn bù róngyì.
- iii Chángcháng zuò qìgōng duì shēntǐ hǎo.
- iv Qìgōng yǒu gèzhǒng gèyàng de.
- v Hěn duō rén rènwéi qìgōng kěyǐ zhì gèzhǒng gèyàng de bìng.
- vi Qìgōng gēn tàijíquǎn dōu shì hěn màn de yùndòng.

▶ Quick review

- a You see your Chinese friend looking unwell. Ask what's wrong with her (*lit.* where she is not comfortable).
- b Say you want to try acupuncture.
- c Say you think you have a cold.
- d Tell the doctor that you have never taken Chinese medicine.
- e Tell the doctor that you sometimes have a headache.



duìfú wèntí
coping with problems

In this unit you will learn

- how to ask for help
- some key expressions to describe your problems
- some expressions required in an emergency
- the basic Highway Code in China

Revise before you start

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| • gēn . . . yíyàng (6) | • how long (9) |
| • zuì (<i>most</i>) (7) | • reduplicated verbs (6) |
| • noun + on (5) | • méi yǒu (<i>not to have</i>) (2) |
| • yòu . . . yòu (9) | • gěi (<i>for</i>) (6) |
| • helping verbs (6) | • verb endings (10) |
| • measure words (4)(7) | • yǒu (yì)diǎnr (8) |
| • use of háishi (6) | • sentences ending in le (4) |

Zhōngguó de Jiāotōng Transport in China

What do you know about transport in China? A lot of bikes? That's right. But read the passage below and find out something more about it. (Words in *italics* are explained in the box below.)

Zài Zhōngguó, kāi chē hé qí zìxíngchē dōu zǒu lù de yòubiān. Zhè gēn zài Měiguó hé Ōuzhōu dàlù yíyàng, gēn zài Yīngguó bù yíyàng.

Zhōngguó shì shìjiè shàng zìxíngchē zuì duō de guójiā. Zài dà chéngshì yǒu hěn duō zìxíngchē dào. Xiànzài zài Zhōngguó zǔ qìchē hái hěn nán, kěshì zū zìxíngchē bǐjiào fāngbiàn. Qí zìxíngchē yòu piányi yòu yǒu yìsì.

Zài Zhōngguó yǒu dìtiě de chéngshì hěn shǎo. Bù shǎo chéngshì yǒu diànchē.

Yīnwei Zhōngguó-rén tài duō, suǒyǐ lù shàng zǒngshì hěn jǐ, chángcháng dǔ chē. Gōnggòng qìchē yě fēicháng jǐ. Dāngrán nǐ kěyǐ zuò chūzū (qì)chē. Chūzū (qì)chē bù jǐ, kěshì bù piányi.

Yàoshì nǐ cóng yí gè chéngshì qù líng yí gè chéngshì, nǐ kěyǐ zuò fēiji, huǒchē, yě kěyǐ zuò chángtú qìchē. Chángtú qìchē yǒu shíhou bú tài shǔfú.

chángtú qìchē	coach (lit. long distance vehicle)
chéngshì	city
diànchē	tram (lit. electric vehicle)
dìtiě	underground / subway
dǔ chē	(to be in a) traffic jam
duìfú	to cope with
gōnggòng qìchē	bus (lit. public together steam vehicle)
guójiā	country

jiāotōng	transport, traffic
líng yí gè	another; another one
lù shàng	on the road
Ōuzhōu (dàlù)	(continental) Europe
shìjiè (shàng)	(in the) world
yàoshi	if
yīnwei/yīnwei	because
yòu	right
yòubiān	right side
zǒu lù de yòubiān	to drive / cycle on the right
zìxíngchē dào	bicycle lane
zǒngshì	always
zū	to hire, rent
zuǒ	left (opposite of right)

Exercise 1 How do you say the following in Chinese about traffic in the West?

At first sight the sentences may seem to be difficult. But if you model them on the sentences in the passage above you should find them quite manageable.

- In Britain driving and cycling are on the left-hand side of the road.
- This is the same as in Japan and Ireland but not the same as on the Continent.
- America is the country that has the most cars in the world.
- In the West it's not difficult to hire a car.

Key words and phrases

bāo	bag
qiánbāo	purse / wallet
bié rén	other / another person
chēdài	tyre
bǔ chēdài	to mend a tyre
chéng lí	in the city, in urban areas
cuò	fault, mistake
dàshǐguǎn	embassy
dēng	lights
diū	to lose
duō yuǎn?	how far?

Hái yǒu duō yuǎn?	How far is it still to . . . ?
gāoxìng	happy
guǎi	to turn
hǎoxiàng	to seem
hòulái	later
huài	broken, not working; bad
jīngchá	police officer
jīn(yi) jǐn	to tighten
lǐ	inside
liàng	(measure word for vehicles including bicycles)
líng	(for brakes) to work well
mǎshàng	at once
shāndìchē	mountain bike
shéide?	whose?
shēnfènzhèng	identity card
shīfu	title used when addressing a skilled worker (lit. master)
shǒu	hand
shuài le yì jiāo	to have had a fall
tōngzhī	to inform
xiāoxi	news, information
yī . . . jiù	no sooner . . . than . . . , as soon as
yòng-bu-zháo	not necessary
zēnme huí shì?	what's the matter?
zhá	brakes
zhàoxiàngjī	camera
zhuàng	to collide
zhuàng-huài (le)	damage(d) (lit. collide broken)
Zhēn dǎoméi!	How unfortunate! Bad luck!

Placewords such as *lǐ* (inside) as in *chéng lǐ* can also have a longer form, so you will sometimes see *limiàn(r)* (lit. in surface) or *libiān(r)* (lit. in side) instead of just *lǐ*. There is no difference in meaning, however. This also applies to words like *shàng* (on or on top of), *xià* (underneath) and *wài* (outside).

Note that *shìjiè shàng* does not mean *on top of the world* but *in the world*. *Lǐ* is only used when you can actually get inside something, such as a shop, or when referring to money in a purse.

Dialogues

Dialogue 1

When visiting a Chinese city, it is worth hiring a bicycle to explore the local area. It's economical too! This is what Ann and her friend are trying to do when they visit Nanjing. Listen to, or read, the dialogue and find out what kind of bicycle is available and how much they cost.

Ann	Wǒ xiǎng zū liǎng liàng zìxíngchē.
Shopkeeper	Yǒu shēnfènzhèng ma?
Ann	Yǒu. Zhè shì wǒde hùzhào.
Shopkeeper	Hǎo. Nín zū nǐ zhǒng chē?
Ann	Wǒ yào yì liàng xiǎo de. Wǒde péngyou yào yì liàng dà de.
Shopkeeper	Nǐmen zū jǐ tiān?
Ann	Yì tiān.
Shopkeeper	Nèi liǎng liàng shāndìchē búcuò. Nǐmen shìshì ba.
Ann and her friend	try the bikes.
Ann	Zhèi liàng chē de zhá hǎoxiàng bú tài líng.
Shopkeeper	Shì ma? Wǒ gěi nǐ jīnyìjīn.
Ann	Zhèi xiē chē zēnme dōu méi yǒu dēng?
Shopkeeper	Zài chéng lǐ yòng-bu-zháo dēng.
Ann	Hǎo ba. Wǒ zū zhèi liǎng liàng. Duōshǎo qián?
Shopkeeper	Zhèi liàng dà de yì tiān shíbā kuài. Nà liàng xiǎo de yì tiān shíwǔ kuài. Yí gòng sānshísān kuài.
Ann	Gěi nín sìshí kuài.
Shopkeeper	Zhǎo nín qī kuài.

i Bicycle parking lots (*Cúncāchù*) abound in Chinese cities. For a very modest charge you can leave your bicycle there. It will be much safer.

Bicycles in China are not required by law to have lights. It is worth bearing this in mind as a cyclist or a motorist: as a cyclist it means you are difficult to be seen, as a motorist it means you have to be extra alert when driving in the dark.

存车处

Cúncāchù

Exercise 2 Now you are visiting Taiwan and you want to hire a car. Complete the dialogue below. **Dialogue 1** should help you.

- a **You** (Say you would like to hire a car.)
Clerk Nín yǒu jiàzhào (*driving licence*) ma?
b **You** (Say yes and yours is a British one.)
Clerk Nín yào nǐ zhǒng chē?
c **You** (Say you'd like to have a small one.)
Clerk Zhèi liàng kěyǐ ma?
d **You** (Say it's fine.)
Clerk Nín zū jǐ tiān?
e **You** (Say two days.)
Clerk Qǐng dào nèibiān fù qián.
f **You** (Ask if they take credit cards.)
Clerk Shōu.

Dialogue 2

Unfortunately Ann has got a flat tyre on her bike. She sees a bike repair man by the side of the road and walks over for help.

- Ann** Shīfu, wǒde chēdài huài le, nín néng bāng wǒ xiūxiu ma?
Shīfu Méi wèntí.
Ann Děi duō cháng shíjiān?
Shīfu Yihuǐr jiù xíng.
Ann Shīfu, chōu zhī yān ba.
Shīfu Hǎo, hǎo. Xièxie, xièxie.
Ann Shīfu, qù Xiāngshān hái yǒu duō yuǎn?
Shīfu Wǎng běi qí èrshí fēnzhōng, zài wǎng xī guǎi jiù dào le.

* * *

- Shīfu** Xiū-hǎo le.
Ann Zhēn kuài. Xièxie nín. Zhèi liàng chē de zhá bú tài líng, nín néng kànkān ma?
Shīfu Kěyǐ. Wǒ gěi nín jīnjīn. . . . Xíng le.
Ann Xièxie nín. Yígòng duōshao qián?
Shīfu Bǔ chēdài liǎng kuài wǔ. Jīn zhá jiù bù shōu nǐ qián le.
Ann Xièxie shīfu. Nín zài chōu zhī yān ba.

雪中送炭

Chinese proverb: **Xuě zhōng sòng tàn**
Send charcoal in snowy weather – provide timely help

Exercise 3 In **Dialogue 2**, you saw several noun phrases consisting of a verb and an object, such as: **bǔ chēdài**, **jīn zhá** and **qù Xiāngshān**.

These phrases can be used at the beginning of a sentence as a kind of topic – the opposite of the word order in English. You can see this clearly from the example:

Kāi chē shàng bān děi *How long does it take to drive*
duō cháng shíjiān? *to work?*

Now try the same thing with the sentences below when you put them into Chinese.

- a It takes an hour *to drive to work*.
b How much does it cost *to have the tyre mended?*
c How do I *get to the Fragrant Hills by bus?*
d It costs 30 yuan *to hire a bike*.

Dialogue 3

Anyīn notices that her friend Ben is looking rather unhappy. Listen to, or read, the dialogue and find out what happened to Ben.

- Anyīn** Nǐ hǎoxiàng yǒu diǎnr
bù gāoxìng.
Ben Méi shénme.
Anyīn Nǐde shǒu zěnmē le?
Ben O, wǒ shuāi le yì jiāo.
Anyīn Zěnmē huí shì?
Ben Zhēn dǎoméi! Wǒ gēn
bié rén zhuàng chē le.
Anyīn Shì shéide cuò?
Ben Wǒ shuō shì tāde cuò,
tā shuō shì wǒde cuò.
Anyīn Chē zhuàng-huài le ma?
Ben Zhuàng-huài le.
Anyīn Nǐmen zhǎo jǐngchá
le ma?
Ben Zhǎo le. Jǐngchá shuō
wǒmen dōu yǒu cuò.
Anyīn Hòulái ne?
Ben Hòulái, wǒmen dōu qù
xiū zìjǐ de chē le.



i In China you can turn right at a red light (**hóng dēng**) so be very alert when you see a red traffic light whether you are driving a car or riding a bicycle. **Hónglǜdēng** means *traffic lights* (lit. red green light)

▶ Exercise 4 Say whether the following statements are **duì** or **bú duì** (true or false).

- | | duì | bú duì |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| a Ānyīn hěn bù gāoxìng. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b Ben gēn bié rén zhuàng chē le. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c Nà ge rén shuō shì Ben de cuò. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d Zhuàng chē yǐhòu, Ben zhǎo le jǐngchá. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| e Ben de chē zhuàng-huài le. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| f Jǐngchá shuō shì Ben de cuò. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| g Ben qù xiū Ānyīn de chē le. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

▶ Dialogue 4

Ben is now at a local police station. He really has had bad luck. Read the dialogue, and find out what his problem is and what he is advised to do.

- Jǐngchá** Nín yǒu shénme shì?
Ben Wǒde bāo diū le.
Jǐngchá Bāo límiàn yǒu shénme?
Ben Yǒu wǒde hùzhào hé qiánbāo. Qiánbāo lǐ yǒu wǒde xīnyòng kǎ, sībǎi duō rénmínbì hé liǎngbǎi měiyuán. O, hái yǒu yí ge xiǎo zhàoxiàngjī.
Jǐngchá Nín diū le hùzhào, yīnggāi tōngzhī nǐmen guójiā de dàshǐguǎn.
Ben Wǒ gěi dàshǐguǎn dǎ diànhuà le.
(The policewoman takes down the details of the incident.)
Jǐngchá Nín xiànzài zhù zài nǎ?
Ben Yùnlóng Fàndiàn sān-líng-yāo fángjiān.
Jǐngchá Qǐng nín xiān huí qù. Wǒmen yī yǒu xiāoxi jiù mǎshàng tōngzhī nín.

Linking words (also known as conjunctions) often come in pairs in Chinese so it is good to memorize them as such. There are two examples in this unit.

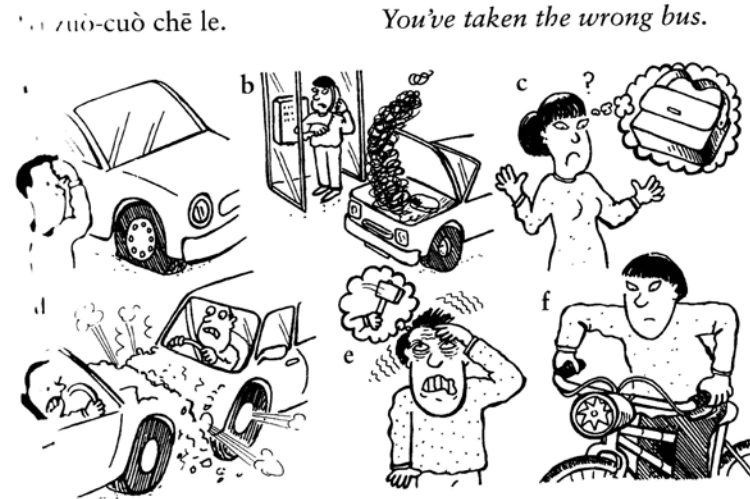
yīnwei . . . suǒyǐ . . .
 . . . yī + verb¹ jiù + verb²

because . . . therefore . . .
 as soon as verb¹ happens,
 then verb² will happen
(Dialogue 4)

Exercise 5 Now you have listened to, or read, Dialogue 3 answer the following questions.

- What was Ben's problem?
- What was in the bag?
- How much money had he taken with him?
- Where was Ben staying?
- What was he advised to do about the loss of the passport?
- What did the police say they would do?

Exercise 6 Make at least one statement about the problems in the following pictures.



▶ Quick review

You happen to have run into a problem:

- How would you say 'What bad luck!?'
- Say that it's not your fault.
- Say that you think they should go to the police.
- Say that you've lost your credit card.
- Something has gone wrong with your bike (or anything), ask if someone can have a look at it.

Revise before you start

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------|-----|---------------------------------------|------|
| • use of háishi | (6) | • be in the middle of doing something | (6) |
| • gēn . . . yíàng | (6) | • gèng (<i>even more</i>) | (8) |
| • use of de after verbs | (8) | • verb endings | (10) |
| • tài . . . le | (7) | • zuì (<i>most</i>) | (7) |
| • helping verbs | (6) | • duō + verb | (10) |

Zhōngwén háishi Hànyǔ? *The Chinese for 'Chinese'!*

Which Chinese word describes the language you have been learning in this book? Is it Hànyǔ, Zhōngwén, Pǔtōnghuà, Guóyǔ or Huáyǔ? Read the passage below and find out.

Zhōngwén yìbān zhǐ Hànyǔ. Zhōng wén de zhōng shì Zhōngguó de zhōng. Wén shì *writing huòzhě language* de yìsi. Hànyǔ de hàn shì Hàn zú de hàn. Yǔ shì yǔyán de yǔ, yě shì *language* de yìsi. Hànyǔ jiù shì Hànzú-rén de yǔyán. Zhōngguó de hěn duō shāoshù mínzú dōu yǒu zìjǐ de yǔyán.

Hànyǔ yǒu hěn duō zhǒng fāngyán. Shànghǎihuà shì yì zhǒng fāngyán. Shànghǎi-rén shuō Shànghǎihuà. Guǎngdōnghuà yě shì yì zhǒng fāngyán. Guǎngdōng-rén hé Xiānggǎng-rén dōu shuō Guǎngdōnghuà.

Wǒmen xuéxí de Zhōngwén shì Pǔtōnghuà. Pǔtōnghuà bú shì fāngyán, shì guānfāng yǔyán. Táiwan-rén jiào tā Guóyǔ, Dōngnányà de Huá-rén jiào tā Huáyǔ. Guóyǔ hé Huáyǔ jiù shì Pǔtōnghuà. Pǔtōnghuà bú shì Běijīnghuà. Běijīnghuà hé Pǔtōnghuà chàbuduō. Hěn duō Běijīng-rén shuō de Pǔtōnghuà yǒu Běijīng kǒuyīn.

In this unit you will learn

- the basic vocabulary to describe the characteristics of a language
- how to talk about your future plans
- how to respond to compliments or forthright remarks

19

xuéxí Zhōngwén

learning Chinese

Key words and phrases

Dōngnányà	<i>South-East Asia</i>
fāngyán	<i>dialect</i>
guānfāng	<i>official</i>
Guóyǔ	<i>national language</i>
Hànzú	<i>Han nationality</i>
Hànzú-rén	<i>the Han people</i>
Huá	<i>another word for China</i>
Huá-rén	<i>overseas Chinese people</i>
kǒuyīn	<i>accent</i>
Pǔtōnghuà	<i>Chinese (Mandarin)</i> <i>(lit. common language)</i>
shǎoshù mínzú	<i>national minority</i>
wén	<i>language, writing</i>
yǔ (yán)	<i>language</i>
zhǐ	<i>to refer to</i>

Exercise 1 There are several language terms in the passage on the previous page. You will find them very useful. Without referring to the vocabulary list, can you match the words with their correct meanings?

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| a Pǔtōnghuà | i Cantonese |
| b Guóyǔ | ii Chinese (spoken by overseas Chinese) |
| c Guǎngdōnghuà | iii Chinese language |
| d fāngyán | iv Chinese (spoken in Mainland China) |
| e Zhōngwén | v accent |
| f kǒuyīn | vi Chinese (spoken in Taiwan) |
| g Huáyǔ | vii dialect |

Exercise 2 Fill in the blanks with suitable words. You will find it useful to go back to the passage on the previous page.

- a Dàbùfen Zhōngguó-rén shì ____ rén. Tāmen shuō ____.
- b Sìchuānhuà bú shì Pǔtōnghuà, shì yì zhǒng ____ . Yǒude Sìchuān-rén shuō de Pǔtōnghuà yǒu Sìchuān ____.
- c Pǔtōnghuà zài Táiwan jiào ____, zài Dōngnányà jiào ____.
- d Zài Zhōngguó, hěn duō shǎoshù mínzú de rén huì shuō tāmen zìjǐ de ____, yě huì shuō ____.

Key words and phrases

bù xíng	<i>not that good</i>
cōngmíng	<i>clever</i>
dàjiā	<i>everyone</i>
duì . . . yǒu / gǎn xìngqu	<i>to be interested in</i>
duō tīng/shuō/dú/xiě	<i>to listen / speak / read / write more</i>
Éguó-rén	<i>Russian (person)</i>
èrhú	<i>a two-stringed musical instrument</i>
fāngfǎ	<i>method</i>
fānyī	<i>interpreter, translator;</i> <i>to translate</i>
guòjiǎng	<i>to exaggerate, to flatter</i>
Hánguó-rén	<i>Korean (person)</i>
jiǎndān	<i>simple</i>
jièshào	<i>to introduce; introduction</i>
jīngjì	<i>economy</i>
jìzhě	<i>journalist</i>
Kǒngzǐ	<i>Confucius</i>
Lǎozǐ	<i>an ancient philosopher</i>
Lǐ Bái	<i>an ancient poet</i>
lìshǐ	<i>history</i>
liúli	<i>fluent</i>
pípa	<i>a musical instrument</i>
qiānxū	<i>modest</i>
shēng	<i>tone (e.g. dī-yī/èr shēng = the 1st / 2nd tone)</i>
shēngdiào	<i>tones</i>
wénxué	<i>literature</i>
xiānsheng	<i>husband</i>
xiě	<i>to write</i>
xìngqu	<i>interest</i>
xuésheng	<i>student</i>
yánjiū	<i>to study, to research</i>
yǔfǎ	<i>grammar</i>
yǔyīn	<i>pronunciation</i>
zhéxué	<i>philosophy</i>
zhǐyào . . . jiù . . .	<i>so long as . . . then . . .</i>
Zhuāngzǐ	<i>an ancient philosopher</i>

Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Lányīn, a student of Chinese, is talking to Huáyàn, a Chinese student of English, about learning foreign languages. Listen to, or read, the dialogue and find out the secret of Lányīn's success in learning Chinese.

Huáyàn Nǐde Zhōngwén zhēn bàng, shuō-de zhēn liúli.
Lányīn Nǎli, nǎli, shuō-de bù hǎo.
Huáyàn Nǐde yǔyīn, shēngdiào dōu fēicháng hǎo.
Lányīn Bù xíng, bù xíng, hái chà-de hěn yuǎn.
Huáyàn Nǐ xué le jǐ nián le?
Lányīn Sān nián le.
Huáyàn Shénme? Zhǐ yǒu sān nián?! Nǐ tài cōngmíng le.
Lányīn Nǐ guòjiǎng le.
Huáyàn Wǒ xué le liù nián Yīngyǔ le, kěshì shuō-de hái hěn chà.
Lányīn Nǐ zhēn qiǎnxū.
Huáyàn Nǐ yíding yào gào sù wǒ nǐde xuéxí fāngfǎ.
Lányīn Hěn jiǎndān. Wǒ xiānshēng shì Zhōngguó-rén.

Exercise 3 Answer the following questions in Chinese based on Dialogue 1.

- In what aspects is Lányīn's Chinese good?
- How long has Lányīn been learning Chinese?
- How good is Huáyàn's English?
- How long has Huáyàn been learning English?
- What does Huáyàn want to know from Lányīn?
- Who does Lányīn think she owes her success to?

Key words and phrases

The following table lists the degrees of goodness you have met in descending order.

zuì hǎo	<i>the best</i>
fēicháng hǎo	<i>extremely good / well</i>
búcuò	<i>pretty good / well</i>
(hěn) hǎo	<i>(very) good / well</i>
bù tài hǎo	<i>not very good / well</i>
bù hǎo	<i>not good / well</i>
hěn bù hǎo/hěn chà	<i>very poor / badly</i>

Note that **hǎo** translates as *good* or *well* depending on whether it is being used as an adjective/verb, when it means *good*, or as an adverb, when it means *well*.

Tā shuō de hěn hǎo. *He speaks very well.*
 Tāde Yīngwén hěn hǎo. *Her English is very good.*

Dialogue 2

On the first day of a Chinese summer course the students introduce themselves and talk about their reasons for studying Chinese. Read the dialogue to find out where they are from and why they want to learn Chinese.

Lǎoshī Nǐmen hǎo. Wǒ xìng Táng, shì nǐmen de lǎoshī. Nǐmen kěyǐ jiào wǒ Táng lǎoshī. Wǒ hái bú rènshi nǐmen. Xiān qǐng dàjiā jièshào yíxià zìjǐ.
Wèimín Wǒ shì Éguó-rén. Wǒ jiào Bái Wèimín. Bái shì Lǐ Bái de Bái. Wǒ hěn xīhuan Zhōngguó wénxué. Jiānglái wǒ xiǎng dāng fānyì.
Ānfāng Wǒ xìng Cuī, jiào Cuī Ānfāng. Wǒ shì Hánguó-rén. Wǒ duì Zhōngguó yīnyuè hěn yǒu xìngqù. Wǒ xiànzài zài xuéxí èrhú hé pípa.
Wénzhé Wǒ shì Měiguó-rén. Wǒ de Zhōngwén míngzì jiào Shǐ Wénzhé. Shǐ shì lìshǐ de shǐ, wén shì wénxué de wén, zhé shì zhéxué de zhé. Wǒ yě xīhuan Zhōngguó wénxué. Wǒ gèng xīhuan Zhōngguó zhéxué. Wǒ yào yánjiū Kǒngzǐ. Lǎozǐ hé Zhuāngzǐ.
Lányīn Wǒ shì Yīngguó-rén. Wǒ duì Zhōngguó de shǎoshù mínzú hěn yǒu xìngqù. Wǒ jiānglái xiǎng yánjiū tāmen de lìshǐ hé yǔyán.
Lǎoshī Nǐ jiào shénme míngzì?
Lányīn O, duibuqǐ. Wǒ jiào Lányīn. Wǒ hái bù zhīdao jiānglái zuò shénme, kěnéng dāng jìzhě.
Shānběn Wǒ jiào Shānběn, shì Riběn-rén. Wǒ xiànzài zài yánjiū Zhōngguó jīngjì.
Lǎoshī Xièxie dàjiā de jièshào.

Exercise 4 Refer to Dialogue 2 and fill in the blanks in the sentences below saying who is who and who is doing what.

- _____ xuéshēng Cuī Ānfāng zài xuéxí _____ hé _____.
- Lányīn shì _____ -rén. Tā xiǎng yánjiū _____ de yǔyán hé lìshǐ.
- Nà ge _____ xuéshēng jiào Shānběn. Tā duì _____ yǒu xìngqù.
- Bái Wèimín xiǎng dāng _____. Lányīn xiǎng dāng _____.
- Wénzhé de wén shì _____ de wén, zhé shì _____ de zhé. Tā shuō tā duì _____ yǒu xìngqù, duì _____ gèng yǒu xìngqù.

Exercise 5 Imagine that you are one of the students in the class (in **Dialogue 2**) and try to introduce your teacher and fellow students in Chinese. You could use some of the sentences in **Exercise 4**.

Dialogue 3

Is Chinese difficult? Let's hear what the students in **Dialogue 2** have to say.

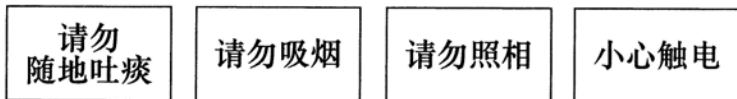
- Lǎoshī** Nǐmen juéde Zhōngwén nán bu nán?
Shānběn Hànzì bù nán, yǔyīn hěn nán.
Lányīn Yīnwei nǐ shì Riběn-rén, huì xiě Hànzì, suǒyǐ nǐ juéde Hànzì bù nán. Wǒ juéde Hànzì tài nán le.
Wénzhé Hànzì bù róngyì, kěshì yǔfǎ gèng nán. Wǒ zǒngshì bù zhīdao shénme shíhou yòng **le**, shénme shíhou bú yòng **le**.
Wèimín Hànyǔ yǔfǎ bú tài nán, shēngdiào zhēn bù róngyì. Wǒ chángcháng shuō-bu-hǎo dì-èr shēng hé dì-sì shēng.
Ānfāng Wǒ juéde dì-sān shēng zuì nán.
Lǎoshī Zhōngwén bù róngyì, kěshì **zhǐyào** wǒmen duō tīng, duō shuō, duō dú, duō xiě, wǒmen **jiù** yíding kěyǐ xué-hǎo.

This is a good time to go back over the **Pronunciation guide** and to practise your tones. If you have the recording, go right back to the beginning again and repeat all the sounds and tones. Hopefully this will now seem very easy!

Here's another pair of linking words to add to the ones you met in Unit 18, p. 202.

Zhǐyào ... jiù ... *if only / as long as ... then ...*

He can read when it suits him!



No spitting



No smoking



No photography



Danger: electric shock

Exercise 6 Do you speak other languages? What would you say about them in terms of pronunciation and grammar? How well do you speak them? Do you speak them with an accent or not? Try to use some of the sentences in **Dialogue 3**. (We have provided sample answers in the **Key to the exercises**.)

Here are some phrases you might find useful:

bàng	fēicháng hǎo	hěn hǎo/liúli
búcuò	tǐng hǎo	hái kěyǐ
bú (tài) hǎo/liúli	hěn bù hǎo/liúli	hěn chà

- a Wǒ huì shuō ____ (hé ____).
 b Wǒde ____ búcuò. *or* Wǒde ____ shuō-de ____.
 c Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr ____.
 d Wǒ shuō ____ shuō-de yǒu (yìdiǎnr) ____ kǒuyīn.
 e ____ (a language) de yǔyīn ____.

Quick review

How do you say/ask the following in Chinese?

- a Do you find English pronunciation difficult?
 b I can only write a few Chinese characters.
 c I speak a little Chinese but I find tones difficult.
 d You are modest.
 e I find it difficult to understand her accent.
 f Your English/French/German is pretty good.
 g You are flattering me.

20

lǚxíng hé
tiānqì
travel and weather

In this unit you will learn

- revise how to get to somewhere
- learn about Chinese festivals
- learn about regional differences
- practise talking about the weather

Revise before you start

- making comparisons (6)(7)
- cong . . . dào (9)
- zuì (most) (7)
- new situation le (5)
- zènmeiyàng (8)
- gen . . . yíyàng (6)
- tài . . . le (7)
- helping verbs (5)
- . . . de shíhou (10)
- A lí B yuǎn/jìn (7)
- xiān . . . zài (9)
- . . . yǐhòu (10)
- verb + de (8)
- yǒu diǎnr (8)
- yòu . . . yòu (9)

▶ Qìhòu hé tiānqì *Climate and weather*

The passage below, together with the dialogues later in this unit, will help you talk in Chinese about the weather, a topic for all seasons! Can you work out from this passage which seasons Chinese people prefer and why?

Zhōngguó hěn dà, dōng, xī, nán, běi de qìhòu chángcháng hěn bù yíyàng. Yìbānláishuō, nánfāng de xiàtiān bǐ běifāng de rè, běifāng de dōngtiān bǐ nánfāng de lěng.

Zài Zhōngguó, dàbùfen dìfāng yǒu sì ge jìjié: chūn, xià, qiū, dōng. Chūntiān cóng sānyuè dào wǔyuè. Liùyuè, qīyuè, bāyuè shì xiàtiān. Qiūtiān shì jiǔ, shí hé shííyuè. Shí'èryuè dào èryuè shì dōngtiān. Yìbān qī, bāyuè zuì rè; yī, èryuè zuì lěng. Zhōngguó-rén bǐjiào xǐhuan chūntiān hé qiūtiān, yīnwéi chūntiān hé qiūtiān bù lěng yě bù rè.

bǐjiào xǐhuan	to prefer
chūn(tiān)	spring
jìjié	seasons
lěng	cold
nánfāng	the south
qìhòu	climate
qiū(tiān)	autumn
yìbānláishuō	generally speaking

Exercise 1 Follow the sentences in paragraph two in the passage and talk about the seasons in your part of the world or a country or region that you know well. We have given sample answers for Europe in the Key to the exercises.

- a Chūntiān cóng ____ dào ____.
 b ____, ____, ____ shì xiàtiān.
 c Qiūtiān shì ____, ____, ____.
 d ____ dào ____ shì dōngtiān.

Exercise 2 How would you answer these questions that a Chinese person might ask you?

- a Nǐmen guójiā yǒu jǐ ge jìjié?
 b Nǎ ge yuè zuì rè? Nǎ ge yuè zuì lěng?
 c Nǐ bǐjiào xǐhuan nǎ ge jìjié?
 d Zài nǐmen guójiā běifāng shì bu shì bǐ nánfāng lěng?

Key words and phrases

ānpái	arrangement; to arrange
Wǒ lái ānpái ba.	I'll make the arrangements.
cónglái	ever
dàibìāotuán	delegation
dāng	to be; to work / act as
dù	degree (°C)
fādá	developed
fēngjǐng	scenery
gōngzuò	work; to work
hěn shǎo	seldom; (very) few
huí guó	return to one's own country
huí lái	to come back
jiàn miàn	to meet
kāi xué	start of term
měi	beautiful
qìwēn	(weather) temperature
tè	extremely
Wútái Shān	Mount Wutai (in Shānxī province)
xiǎng	to miss, long for
(tiānqi) yùbào	(weather) forecast
yúkuài	happy, pleasant

fēng	wind	guā fēng	windy (lit. blow wind)
yǔ	rain	xià yǔ	to rain (lit. descend rain)
xuě	snow	xià xuě	to snow (lit. descend snow)
nuǎn(huo)	warm	liáng(kuai)	cool

Dialogues

Dialogue 1

Colin, who is studying in Tiānjīn, is ringing his Chinese friend, Sūlán, in Kūnmíng, Yúnnán Province to arrange a meeting between them during the winter vacation.

- Colin** Zhè jǐ tiān Tiānjīn tài lěng, kěshì fēngjǐng zhēn měi. Zuótiān xià xuě le.
Sūlán Xuě dà ma?
Colin Bù xiǎo. Tiānqi yùbào shuō, míngtiān hái yào xià xuě.
Sūlán Kūnmíng cónglái bú xià xuě. Wǒ zhēn xiǎng qù Tiānjīn kàn xuě.
Colin Nǐ nàr tiānqi zěnmeyàng?
Sūlán Bù nuǎnhuo. Jīntiān de qìwēn shì shíwǔ dù.
Colin Shénme? Shíwǔ dù? Gēn Tiānjīn de chūntiān yíyàng nuǎnhuo.
Sūlán Kěshì wǒ juéde lěng. Jīntiān shàngwǔ xià le xiǎo yǔ.
Colin Wǒ zuì xǐhuan xiǎo yǔ. Kěshì Tiānjīn dōngtiān hěn shǎo xià yǔ.
Sūlán Nǐ lái Kūnmíng kàn yǔ, wǒ qù Tiānjīn kàn xuě, zěnmeyàng?
Colin Zhēn shì ge hǎo zhǔyi! Wǒ lái ānpái ba.
Sūlán Děngyidēng! Nàme wǒmen zài nǎr jiàn miàn ne?

Exercise 3 Are these statements about Dialogue 1 **duì** or **bú duì**?

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| | duì | bú duì |
| a Tiānjīn zuótiān xià le xiǎo xuě. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b Kūnmíng jīntiān xià le xiǎo yǔ. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c Sūlán bù xǐhuan kàn xuě. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d Kūnmíng tiānqi bù lěng, kěshì Sūlán juéde lěng. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| e Colin rènwéi tāmen yīnggāi zài Kūnmíng jiàn miàn. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

Exercise 4 Zhè liǎng tiān tiānqi zěnmeyàng? *What's the weather been like the last two days?*

Read the following statements, and decide whether each is true. If not, negate it.

- Example:** Zuótiān xià yǔ le.
 • Duì. (i.e. Zuótiān xià yǔ le.)
 • Bú duì. Zuótiān méi xià yǔ.

- a Jīntiān tiānqi hěn nuǎnhuo.
 b Jīntiān zǎoshang guā fēng le.
 c Jīntiān wǎnshang yǒu dà yǔ.
 d Jīntiān èrshí dù.
 e Zuótiān tiānqi tài rè.
 f Zuótiān shàngwǔ xià le xiǎo xuě.
 g Zuótiān xiàwǔ fēng bú dà.

▶ Dialogue 2

The students from Unit 19 are discussing where they plan to go during the holiday.

- Lǎoshī** Jiàqī nǐmen dǎsuàn qù nǎr?
Shānběn Wǒ xǐhuan dà chéngshì. Wǒ xiān qù Shànghǎi, ránhòu qù Guǎngzhōu. Shànghǎi hé Guǎngzhōu de jīngjì zuì fādá.
Lányīn Wǒ bù xǐhuan dà chéngshì. Wǒ yào qù Yúnnán hé Guìzhōu. Nàr yǒu hěn duō shǎoshù mínzú.
Wénzhé Yúnnán hé Guìzhōu dōu zài Zhōngguó de nánfāng, xiàtiān yíding hěn rè. Wǒ qù Shānxī de Wútái Shān. Nàr yíding hěn liángkuai.
Wèimín Zhè ge jiàqī wǒ yǒu gōngzuò. Wǒ qù Tiānjīn gěi yí ge dài biàotuán dāng fānyì.
Lǎoshī Ānfāng, nǐ ne?
Ānfāng Wǒ zhēn xiànmù nǐmen. Kěshì wǒ yào huí Hánguó. Wǒ tài xiǎng wǒ bàba, māma le. Kāi xué de shíhou wǒ zài huí lái.

i The Chinese calendar

In China there are two different calendars in use. One is identical to our Western calendar and the other is the traditional or lunar calendar. Chinese calendars include both! In the example below, the lunar calendar is written in small print. As you may have guessed, 廿 is the shortened form of 二十. On which date does Chinese New Year begin?

星期日	星期一	星期二	星期三	星期四	星期五	星期六
	1 ⁷ 元旦	2 ⁸ 初二	3 ⁹ 初三	4 ¹⁰ 初十	5 ¹¹ 小寒	6 ¹² 十二
7 ¹³ 十三	8 ¹⁴ 十四	9 ¹⁵ 十五	10 ¹⁶ 十六	11 ¹⁷ 十七	12 ¹⁸ 十八	13 ¹⁹ 十九
14 ²⁰ 二十	15 ²¹ 廿一	16 ²² 廿二	17 ²³ 廿三	18 ²⁴ 廿四	19 ²⁵ 廿五	20 ²⁶ 大寒
21 ²⁷ 廿七	22 ²⁸ 廿八	23 ²⁹ 廿九	24 ^{1/1} 正月	25 ² 初二	26 ³ 初三	27 ⁴ 初四
28 ⁵ 初五	29 ⁶ 初六	30 ⁷ 初七	31 ⁸ 初八			

The Chinese New Year starts on 24 January in this particular year.

i Major Chinese festivals

The most important Chinese festival is **Chūnjié** the *Spring Festival* or the *Chinese Lunar New Year*, which falls on the first day of the first lunar month. The Lunar New Year itself may occur as early as January 21st and as late as February 21st. It is the major festival in China (rather like Christmas in the West) and most people try to get home to celebrate it with their families even if it means travelling long distances.

Firecrackers are set off on New Year's Eve and New Year's Day to warn off evil spirits even though many Chinese have probably forgotten the origin of this custom.

Other major festivals are the *Lantern Festival*, the *Pure Brightness or Grave Sweeping Festival*, the *Dragon Boat Festival* and the *Mid-Autumn Festival*, which was originally to pay homage to the full moon.

You could visit your local library to find out more about these festivals: what their origins are, when they occur and how they are celebrated. Most overseas Chinese communities observe these festivals too. You could learn a lot about Chinese traditions. It would also give you an insight into the traditional Chinese way of life which has helped to shape their language.

Exercise 5 Match the sentences in Column A with their English equivalents in Column B.

Column A

- Nàr xiàtiān yíding hěn liángkuai.
- Dà chéngshì de jīngjì hěn fādá.
- Nàr yǒu hěn duō shǎoshù mínzú.
- Jiàqī wǒ dǎsuàn qù lǚxíng.
- Kāi xué de shíhou wǒ zài huí lái.

Column B

- During the holidays I plan to travel.
- There are many minorities there.
- I will come back again when term starts.
- The economy in big cities is developed.
- It must be cool there in the summer.

Exercise 6 Now cover up Column B in Exercise 5 and say what the sentences in Column A mean in English. Once you have done that, cover up Column A and say what the sentences in Column B mean in Chinese.

▶ Dialogue 3

Listen to the dialogue and find out how these students plan to travel to the places they are going to visit during the holiday. Go straight to Exercise 7 without reading the dialogue below. If you haven't got the recording, read the dialogue, and then do Exercise 7.

- Lǎoshī** Nǐmen zěnme qù?
Wèimín Tiānjīn bù yuǎn. Wǒ zuò huōchē qù. Liǎng, sān ge xiǎoshí jiù dào le.
Lányīn Yúnnán lí Běijīng hěn yuǎn. Wǒ kěyǐ zuò huōchē, yě kěyǐ zuò fēijī. Wǒ hái méi yǒu juéding.
Lǎoshī Fēijī bǐ huōchē kuài duōle, kěshì yě guì duōle.
Wénzhé Wútái Shān bù yuǎn yě bú jìn. Wǒ xiān zuò huōchē, zài zuò chángtú qìchē.
Lǎoshī Shānběn, nǐ yào qù liǎng ge dìfang. Nǐ zěnme qù?
Shānbǎn Wǒ xiān zuò fēijī dào Shànghǎi, zài zuò huōchē qù Guǎngzhōu.
Ānfāng Wǒ bù xǐhuan zuò fēijī, kěshì wǒ zhǐ néng zuò fēijī huí guó.
Lǎoshī Hǎo. Zhù dàjiā jiàqī yúkuài.

走马看花

Chinese proverb: **Zǒu mǎ kàn huā**
 Look at flowers while riding on horseback –
 gain a superficial understanding

Exercise 7 How will the students in Dialogue 3 get to their destinations?

- a Wèimín zuò _____ qù Tiānjīn.
 b Lányīn zuò _____ huòzhě _____ qù Yúnnán.
 c Wénzhé zuò _____ hé _____ qù Wútái Shān.
 d Shānběn zuò _____ qù Shànghǎi, zuò _____ qù Guǎngzhōu.
 e Ānfāng zuò _____ huí Hánguó.

Exercise 8 Make complete sentences with the words or phrases given. You will have to supply a missing word in each case. Pay attention to the word order.

Example: Lúndūn/ fēijī/ lái/ tā/ bù
 Tā bú zuò fēijī lái Lúndūn.

- a tā/ qù/ Shànghǎi/ huōchē/ míngtiān
 b lái/ wǒde péngyou/ wǒ jiā/ gōnggòng qìchē
 c qù gōngyuán/ zìxíngchē/ bù/ wǒ
 d mǎi dōngxī/ chē/ tāmen/ chángcháng/ qù
 e dìtiě/ huí jiā/ xiànzài/ wǒ

▶ Exercise 9 Your Chinese friend, Yànmíng, is asking you about the holiday you plan to take.

- Yànmíng** Nǐ dāsuan qù shénme dìfang?
 a **You** (Say you want to go to Hong Kong and Macao.)
Yànmíng Nǐ zěnme qù?
 b **You** (Say you will fly to Hong Kong and then go to Macao by boat.)
Yànmíng Nàr de tiānqì zěnmeyàng?
 c **You** (Say it's hot there in August.)
Yànmíng Xià bu xià yǔ?
 d **You** (Say sometimes it rains.)
Yànmíng Nǐ qù jǐ tiān?
 e **You** (Say you haven't decided yet.)

▶ Exercise 10 Listen to the following passage and then answer the questions on the next page.

Běijīng de Jìjié

Běijīng de dōngtiān yòu **cháng** yòu **lěng**; xiàtiān yòu **cháng** yòu **rè**. Běijīng de chūntiān hěn duǎn yě hěn nuǎnhuo, kěshì chángcháng guā fēng.

Běijīng zuì hǎo de jìjié shì qiūtiān. Qiūtiān bù lěng yě bú rè. Báitiān hěn nuǎnhuo, zǎoshang hé wǎnshang hěn liángkuai. Qiūtiān qíngtiān duō, yīntiān shǎo. Bù chángcháng guā fēng, yě hěn shǎo xià yǔ.

cháng	long	qíngtiān	sunny (day)
báitiān	daytime	yīntiān	cloudy (day)

- a Běijīng de xiàtiān hěn duǎn, shì bu shì?
 b Běijīng de dōngtiān shì bu shì hěn lěng?
 c Běijīng de chūntiān zěnmeyàng?
 d Běijīng de chūntiān shì zuì hǎo de jìjié ma?
 e Wèishénme Běijīng-rén hěn xǐhuan qiūtiān?

Quick review

The following pictures show what the weather was, is and will be like. Make two statements about each of them in relation to what time it is now. It's 10am Friday.

Example: Jīntiān zǎoshang xià dà yǔ le.
(Jīntiān zǎoshang) qìwēn (shì) qī dù.



xīngqīsi shàngwǔ



xīngqīsi wǎnshang



xīngqīwǔ shàngwǔ



xīngqīwǔ xiàwǔ



xīngqīliù



xià xīngqīyī



Bào shàng shuō jīntiān bú huì xià yǔ.
But the paper said it wouldn't rain today.

21

tán gǎnxiǎng experiences, feelings and reflections

- In this unit you will learn
- how to talk about things that happened in the past
 - how to ask people about their impressions
 - how to express regret
 - how to express satisfaction
 - how to write a thank you note

Revise before you start

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------|-----------------------|------|
| • measure words | (4)(7) | • zuì (<i>most</i>) | (7) |
| • numbers from 100 to 1,000 | (7) | • verb endings | (10) |
| • verb + guo | (9) | • ... de shíhou | (10) |
| • helping verbs | (6) | • new situation le | (5) |
| • gèng (<i>even more</i>) | (8) | • shì bu shì | (3) |
| • verb + de | (8) | • tài ... le | (7) |
| • reduplicated verbs | (5) | • sentence le | (4) |
| | | • gěi (<i>for</i>) | (6) |

Qù Zhōngguó xuéxí, lǚyóu hé gōngzuò Go to China to study, travel and work

With China opening up more and more, it attracts more and more visitors: students, tourists and business people. What do the students study? What are the tourists interested in? Why are business people going to China? Read the passage below to find out.

Měi nián yǒu hěn duō wàiguó-rén qù Zhōngguó xuéxí. Tāmen xuéxí Zhōngguó de yǔyán, wénxué, wénhuà, lìshǐ, zōngjiào, dēngdēng. Zài Zhōngguó de jǐ bǎi duō suǒ dàxué lǐ, yǒu jǐ wàn ge wàiguó liúxuéshēng.

Qù Zhōngguó lǚyóu de wàiguó-rén yuè lái yuè duō. Tāmen hěn duō rén duì Zhōngguó de wénhuà hé lìshǐ gǎn xìngqù. Hěn duō rén qù-guo Zhōngguó hěn duō cì.

Zhè jǐ nián qù Zhōngguó gōngzuò de wàiguó-rén yě yuè lái yuè duō. Zài Zhōngguó de wàizī qǐyè hé hézī qǐyè yě yuè lái yuè duō. Hěn duō gōngsī dōu xiǎng zài Zhōngguó kuòdà shēngyì.

dàxué	university
hézī qǐyè	joint venture
jǐ bǎi duō	more than several hundred
kuòdà	to expand
liúxuéshēng	overseas student
lǚyóu	to travel
shēngyì	business
suǒ	(measure word for schools, and so on)
tāmen hěn duō rén	many of them (lit. they many people)
yuè lái yuè ...	more and more ...
wàizī qǐyè	foreign enterprise
wàn	ten thousand
wénhuà	culture
zōngjiào	religion

Here's another pair of linking words to add to your list: yuè lái ... yuè ...

yuè lái yuè duō	<i>more and more</i>
yuè lái yuè hǎo	<i>better and better</i>
yuè lái yuè kuài	<i>quicker and quicker</i>

If you replace lái with another adjective/verb, you get:

yuè kuài yuè hǎo	<i>the quicker the better</i>
yuè duō yuè hǎo	<i>the more the better</i>

Exercise 1 How would you say the following?

- More and more Chinese come to Britain to study.
- Many of them are interested in the history and culture of Britain.
- Every year many foreign students come to Britain to study English.
- More and more European companies want to expand their business in China.

Key words and phrases

bāo	to wrap; to make (jiǎozi)
chángshòu (miàn)	long life (noodles)
chī-de-guàn	to be used to the food
chī-bu-guàn	to be not used to the food
dǒng	to understand
duì X yǒu shénme yìnxiàng?	what is your impression of X?
duì shénme (zui) mǎnyì?	(most) satisfied with what?
fāzhǎn	to develop
jiàoxué	teaching
jiǎozi	(Chinese) dumplings
jiùshi	it's just that
kuàilè	happy
mǎnyì	satisfied
měi(-jīle)	(extremely) beautiful
nàli/nàr	there
nánshuō	difficult to say
qìngzhù	to celebrate
shān qū	mountain(ous) area
tán(yì)tán	to talk (a bit) about
tèsè	feature, characteristics
tīng-bu-dǒng	to be unable to understand (verbal speech)

tóngshì (men)	colleague(s)
tóngxué (men)	fellow student(s)
xià ge	next
xuéxiào	school
yìnxiàng	impression
yíqiè	everything
yìzhí	all the time
yǒuhǎo	friendly

Dialogues

Dialogue 1

The group of students you met in Units 19 and 20 are now all safely back in college. What do they think of the places they have just visited? Let's find out.

Lǎoshī	Tóngxuémen, nǐmen jiàqī guò-de hǎo ma?
Xuésheng (chorus)	Hěn hǎo. Bú tài hǎo. Fēicháng hǎo. Hái kěyǐ.
Lǎoshī	Qǐng měi ge rén dōu tányítán, hǎo ma?
Wénzhé	Wǒ qù le Wútái Shān. Nàli yíqiè dōu hǎo, jiùshi fàn bu hǎo.
Lǎoshī	Fàn zěnme bù hǎo?
Wénzhé	Tāmen bù chī ròu. Kěshì wǒ zuì ài chī ròu, suǒyǐ wǒ chángcháng juéde è.
Wèimín	Nǐ yīnggāi gēn wǒ yìqǐ qù Tiānjīn. Wǒmen de dàibiǎotuán měi tiān dōu yǒu yànhuì.
Lǎoshī	Lányīn, shǎoshù mínzú de fàn nǐ chī-de-guàn ma?
Lányīn	Kāishǐ de shíhou chī-bu-guàn, hòulái jiù chī-de-guàn le. Nàxiē shǎoshù mínzú de rén zhēn yǒuhǎo.
Lǎoshī	Nàr shì bu shì hěn rè?
Lányīn	Wǒ qù de dìfang shì shān qū, suǒyǐ bú tài rè. Nàr de fēngjǐng měi-jíle.
Lǎoshī	Shānběn, nǐ duì Shànghǎi hé Guǎngzhōu yǒu shénme yìnxiàng?
Shānběn	Zhè liǎng ge chéngshì de jīngjì dōu fāzhǎn-de hěn kuài. Kěxǐ wǒ tīng-bu-dǒng Shànghǎihuà hé Guǎngdōnghuà.
Lǎoshī	Zhè liǎng zhǒng fāngyán dōu bù róngyì dǒng. Ānfāng, nǐ bàba, māma dōu hǎo ma?

Ānfāng	Tāmen dōu hěn hǎo, xièxie nín. Wǒ bàba, māma shuō xià ge jiàqī tāmen yào lái Zhōngguó. Wǒmen yìqǐ zài Zhōngguó lǚyóu.
Dàjiǎ	Nà tài hǎo le!

Learning tip

Keep reading all the dialogues in the book whenever you have a spare moment: better still listen to the recording whenever you can. Practise covering up the English words in the **Key words and phrases** and see how many of the Chinese words you know, then do the reverse. You can go back to the beginning of the book and do this right the way through for useful revision.

Exercise 2 Where did you go on your last holiday? Here are some questions a Chinese person might ask you:

- Nǐ de jiàqī guò-de hǎo bu hǎo?
- Nǐ qù le duō cháng shíjiān?
- Nàli de tiānqì zěnmeyàng?
- Nàli de fàn nǐ chī-de-guàn ma?
- Nàli de fēngjǐng měi bu měi?

Exercise 3 Nǐ duì shénme gǎn/yǒu xìngqù? *What are you interested in?*

State whether you are interested in the following things.

Example: Zhōngguó lìshǐ

- Wǒ duì Zhōngguó lìshǐ gǎn/yǒu xìngqù.
- Wǒ duì Zhōngguó lìshǐ bù gǎn xìngqù or
- Wǒ duì Zhōngguó lìshǐ méi (yǒu) xìngqù.

- liúxíng (*popular*) yīnyuè
- Yìdài fàn
- dískē
- shōují (*collect*) yóupiào
- Déguó diànyǐng

Exercise 4 Are you used to the following food or drinks?

If you are, say **Wǒ chī/hē-de-guàn X**. If you are not, say **Wǒ chī/hē-bu-guàn Y**. Remember you can also put the noun (the sort of thing) at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis.

tángcù yú *sweet and sour fish*

- Wǒ chī-de-guàn tángcù yú.
- Tángcù yú wǒ chī-bu-guàn.

suānlà tāng *hot and sour soup*

- Suānlà tāng wǒ hē-de-guàn.
- Wǒ hē-bu-guàn suānlà tāng.

Start with **tángcù yú** and **suānlà tāng**. And then:

- a Yìndù (*Indian*) fàn?
- b tián pútáojiǔ?
- c dòufu (*tofu*)?
- d Kěkǒukělè?
- e mángguǒ (*mango*)?
- f kāfēi?

Dialogue 2

Mr Ford has lived and worked in China for nearly 12 years. He is interviewed by a Chinese journalist on his 60th birthday. What is he most satisfied and dissatisfied with?

- Jizhě** Fútè xiānsheng, zhù nín shēngrì kuàilè!
Ford Xièxie, xièxie.
Jizhě Nín zài Zhōngguó jǐ nián le?
Ford Chàbuduō shí'èr nián le.
Jizhě Nín yìzhí zài dàxué gōngzuò ma?
Ford Duì. Wǒ fēicháng xǐhuan dāng lǎoshī.
Jizhě Zài Zhōngguó nín duì shénme zuì mǎnyì?
Ford Dāngrán shì wǒde gōngzuò. Wǒmen xuéxiào de jiàoxué yuè lái yuè hǎo.
Jizhě Nàme nín duì shénme zuì bù mǎnyì?
Ford Wǒ duì hěn duō shìqing bù mǎnyì. Kěshì hěn nánshuō duì shénme zuì bù mǎnyì.
Jizhě Nín dǎsuàn zěnmē qingzhù nín de shēngrì?
Ford Zǎoshang wǒ tàitai gěi wǒ zuò le Zhōngguó de chángshòu miàn. Wǎnshang tóngshìmen lái wǒ jiā bāo jiǎozi.
Jizhě Nín de shēngrì guò-de zhēn yǒu Zhōngguó tèsè.
Ford Wǒ xiànzài yǐjīng shì bàn ge Zhōngguó-rén le.

Do you remember meeting two phrases using **duì** in Unit 10?

- A **duì** shēntǐ (bu) hǎo. *A is (not) good for the health/body.*
 Y **duì** X (bù) hǎo. *Y is/(not) good to X.*

Here are some more useful phrases with **duì**:

- Nǐ **duì** X yǒu shénme yìnxiàng?
What impression have you of X?
 Wǒ **duì** X de yìnxiàng hěn hǎo.
I have a very good impression of X.
 Nǐ **duì** shénme (zuì) bù mǎnyì?
What are you (most) dissatisfied with?

- A **duì** B bù mǎnyì.
 A **duì** B zuì bù mǎnyì.

- A is not satisfied with B.*
*A is **most** dissatisfied with B.*

i It is very common for elderly people (the Chinese tend to regard people of 60 and over as elderly!) to eat 'long-life noodles' (**chángshòu miàn**) on their birthdays!



Miàntiáo
Noodles



Jiǎozi
Dumplings

On special occasions such as birthdays and the Chinese New Year the family (plus close friends or colleagues) might make Chinese dumplings (**bāo jiǎozi**) together. It is a very companionable activity which also requires some skill. Beginners can usually spot which **jiǎozi** are theirs when it comes to eating them as they tend to be the unsightly ones or the ones which have burst!

Exercise 5 Your Chinese friend is asking you about your visit to China. This passage is a brief account of your visit.

You visited China on a package tour for two weeks. You visited Beijing, Shanghai and Guilin. You liked all three places, but for different reasons. There were many parks in Beijing which you liked a lot. Shanghai was developing very fast, which impressed you. But there were too many people there and it was very crowded. The scenery at Guilin was extremely beautiful.

Now answer your friend's questions:

- Friend** Nǐ zài Zhōngguó duōshao tiān?
a You _____
Friend Nǐ qù le shénme dìfang?
b You _____
Friend Nǐ duì Shànghǎi yǒu shénme yìnxiàng?
c You _____
Friend Nàme Běijīng ne?
d You _____
Friend Nǐ duì Guīlín de yìnxiàng zěnmeyàng?
e You _____

Exercise 6 Listen to the thank-you message on Lányīn's answerphone. Then decide whether the statements below are *duì* or *bú duì*. Read the new words before you listen to the message.

bāngzhù	help	gǎnxiè	to thank (formal)
tèbié	especially	wèn XX hǎo	say hello to XX
dāngmiàn	face to face		

- Xiǎo Qīng jīntiān shàngwǔ qù Lányīn de xuéxiào le.
- Xiǎo Qīng dāngmiàn gēn Lányīn shuō le zàijiàn.
- Xiǎo Qīng qù-guo Lányīn de jiā.
- Xiǎo Qīng méi jiàn-guo Lányīn de bàba hé māma.

Lányīn,

Nǐ hǎo! Wǒ shì Xiǎo Qīng. Jīntiān xiàwǔ wǒ qù nǐde xuéxiào zhǎo nǐ, kěshì nǐ bú zài. Zhēn kěxī, wǒ bù néng dāngmiàn gēn nǐ shuō 'zàijiàn'.

Zhè cì lái Yīngguó fāngwèn, wǒ guó-de zhēn yúkuài. Nǐ gěi le wǒ hěn duō bāngzhù. Wǒ fēicháng gǎnxiè nǐ. Tèbié gǎnxiè nǐ qǐng wǒ qù nǐde jiā chī fàn. Wǒ gěi nǐ hé nǐ bàba, māma tiān le hěn duō máfan.

Xīwàng nǐ jiānglái yǒu jīhuì yě qù Zhōngguó fāngwèn. Zhù nǐ shēntǐ jiànkāng, shēnghuó yúkuài, gōngzuò shùnlì, wànshì rúyì!

Wèn nǐ bàba, māma hǎo! Zàijiàn!

Final review

1 Do you remember the opposites of these words? What is the opposite of:

- | | | | |
|------------|---------------|----------|-----------|
| a lěng | e piányi | i zǎo | m xià |
| b niánqīng | f ānquán | j yìng | n zuǒ |
| c shòu | g yuǎn | k hòu | o běi |
| d ānjìng | h liáng(kuai) | l yǐqián | p dōngnán |

2 Can you find the Chinese equivalents in Section B to match the English sentences in Section A?

Section A

- Excuse me, is this seat taken?
- Could you please speak more slowly?
- Please come a little earlier tomorrow.
- Please tell the teacher I am not well today.
- Could you please say it again?

Section B

- Qǐng gàoosu lǎoshī wǒ jīntiān bù shūfu.
 - Qǐng nǐ zài shuō yí biàn.
 - Qǐng nǐ shuō màn yidiǎn.
 - Qǐng wèn, zhè ge wèizi yǒu rén zuò ma?
 - Qǐng míngtiān zǎo yidiǎn lái.
- 3 We have given you the literal translations of some Chinese words in this book. Here are some new words with their literal translations. See if you can guess what they mean.

- | | |
|---|---|
| a shǒujī (<i>lit.</i> hand machine) | e tiěfǎnwǎn (<i>lit.</i> iron rice bowl) |
| b diànnǎo (<i>lit.</i> electronic brain) | f nuǎnshuǐpíng (<i>lit.</i> warm water bottle) |
| c guǎnggào (<i>lit.</i> extensive telling) | g tiānxiàn (<i>lit.</i> sky thread) |
| d lùxiàngjī (<i>lit.</i> record image machine) | |

4 Numbers are important. This listening exercise will give you some more practice. Listen to the message on the answerphone and fill in the missing information below. The only new word is **shǒujī** (*mobile phone*) which you've just met in the previous exercise. If you have not got the recording, the passage is included in the **Key to the exercises**.

- Time of arrival in Guangzhou is _____
- His room number is _____
- The hotel's number is _____
- His mobile number is _____
- Length of his stay in Guangzhou is _____
- Date of his departure is _____
- Time of the train is _____
- Stay in Shenzhen for _____ days.
- Date and time of flight back to the UK is _____

- 5 How do you say to or ask a Chinese person the following?
- Say you are not used to eating hot/spicy dishes.
 - Ask her if she is interested in pop (**liúxíng**) music or classical (**gǔdiǎn**) music.
 - Say there are more and more people going abroad for holidays.
 - Ask her what is her impression of Britain (the US etc.).
 - Ask her what she is (most) satisfied and/or not satisfied with.
 - Wish her happy birthday!

有志者，事竟成

Chinese proverb: **Yǒu zhì zhě, shì jìng chéng**
Where there's a will, there's a way.

Zhùhè nǐ! Congratulations!

You have completed *Teach Yourself Beginner's Chinese* and are now a competent speaker of basic Chinese. You should be able to handle most everyday situations on a visit to China and to communicate with Chinese people sufficiently to make friends. Should you wish to comment on any aspect of this book, you can contact us c/o Hodder and Stoughton Educational, 338 Euston Road, London NW1 3BH.

If you would like to extend your ability so that you can develop your confidence, fluency and scope in the language, whether for social or business purposes, why not take your Chinese a step further with *Teach Yourself Chinese*?

You could see if there are any Chinese language classes taking place in your area. Many big universities have Chinese departments or language centres which run courses in a number of foreign languages including Chinese. Large cities often have an annual publication listing all the courses taking place that year and where they are held.

You can also go online and look at the following websites, but do remember these are constantly changing and new ones are being added all the time.

<http://icg.harvard.edu/~pinyin/>

Harvard University Chinese Language website, which has a good pinyin table. RealPlayer is needed.

<http://www.zhongwen.com/>

English and Chinese (full-form characters).
Brief introduction to Chinese language, writing, pinyin, etc.
Texts in Chinese (classical texts, and some modern texts).

<http://www.chineseon.net/>

English and Chinese (simplified characters).
Brief introduction to Chinese language, writing, pinyin, etc.
Illustration of stroke order.
For both Chinese language learners and teachers. Online course for beginners.
Texts in Chinese (classical texts and modern texts).

<http://www.mandarintools.com/>

Another site which has many links to China-related websites.

All the instructions are in English.

English and Chinese (simplified characters).

Online English–Chinese and Chinese–English dictionary.

Illustration of stroke order.

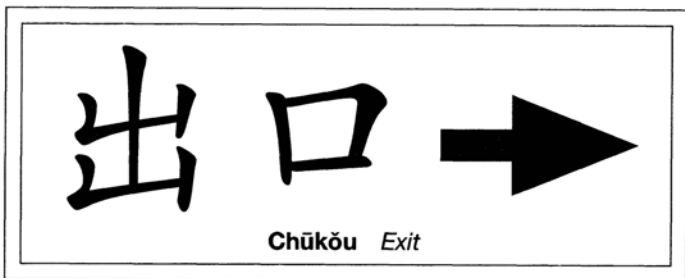
(You can get a Chinese name by typing in your English name.)

<http://www.sinologic.com/clas/>

English and Chinese (simplified and full-form characters).

Comprehensive site with many useful links related to China and Chinese language.

Sections about Chinese culture.



The publisher has used its best endeavours to ensure that the URLs for external websites referred to in this book are correct and active at the time of going to press. However, the publisher has no responsibility for the websites and can make no guarantee that a site will remain live or that the content is or will remain appropriate.

Unit 1

- 1 a Nǐ hǎo! b Xièxie. c Bú yòng xiè. d Xièxie (nǐ).
- 2 a Nǐ hǎo! b Bú yòng xiè. c Xièxie. d Zàijiàn!
- 3 a Nǐ hǎo! b Lǐ tàitai hǎo ma? c Lǐ xiānsheng zài ma? d Xièxie (nǐ).
- 4 a Xièxie. b Bú yòng xiè. c Zàijiàn. d Míngtiān jiàn. e Qǐng jìn. f Qǐng zuò. g Wǒ/Tā hěn hǎo. h Nǐ/Tā hǎo ma?
- 5 a = iv, b = iii, c = ii, d = i.

Quick review

- a Lǐ xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo! or, Nǐ hǎo, Lǐ xiānsheng!
 b Nǐ tàitai hǎo ma? c Duìbuqǐ. d Xièxie nǐ.
 c Bú yòng xiè. f Zàijiàn.

Unit 2

Let's try

- a Qǐng jìn. b Nǐ hǎo. c Qǐng zuò. d Míngtiān jiàn.
- 1 a shénme; jiào. b huì; shuō. c shì; rènshi.
 - 2 a Tāmen shì Lǐ xiānsheng, Yǐng tàitai. b Tā jiào Lǐ Jīnshēng. c Duì. Tā xìng Yǐng. d Bù. Tā xìng Lǐ. e Wǒ (bú) rènshi tāmen.
 - 3 a Wáng. b Lányīng. c a little bit. d Chinese teacher. e No, she doesn't. f She's beautiful. g Yes.
 - 4 a Tā jiào Zhào Huá. Tā shì jǐngchá. b Zhè shì Liú Guāng. Tā shì sījī. c Nà shì Guō Jié. Tā shì dàifu. d Tā jiào Lǐ Mínglì. Tā shì lǎoshī. e Zhè shì Zhōu Jiābǎo. Tā shì xuésheng. f Nà shì Wú Zébì. Tā shì chūshī.
 - 5 a bú duì, b bú duì, c bú duì, d bú duì, e bú duì, f duì.
 - 6 a Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma? Nǐ huì bu huì shuō Yīngwén? b Nǐmen shì lǎoshī ma? Nǐmen shì bu shì lǎoshī? c Xiǎo

Zhèng zài ma? Xiǎo Zhèng zài bu zài? d Lǐ xiānsheng jīntiān lái ma? Lǐ xiānsheng jīntiān lái bu lái? e Wáng Fāng yǒu Yǐngwén míngzi ma? Wáng Fāng yǒu mei yǒu Yǐngwén míngzi? f Lín lǎoshī jiào Lín Péng ma? Lín lǎoshī jiào bu jiào Lín Péng?

Quick review

- a Nín guì xìng? Nǐ xìng shénme? b Wǒ jiào xxx.
c Wǒ méi yǒu Zhōngwén míngzi. d Wǒ bú rènshi tā.
e Méi guānxi. f Wǒde péngyou bú shì lǎoshī.

Unit 3

Let's try

- a Nǐ hǎo. Wǒ jiào X. Nǐ jiào shénme? or Nín guì xìng?
b Nǐ/Nín yǒu hái zi ma? Nǐ/Nín yǒu mei yǒu hái zi?
- 1 a shì/bú shì, b shì/bú shì, c shì/bú shì, d shì/bú shì, e shì/bù zhīdào, f shì/bù zhīdào.
- 2 *Speaker 1:* Nǐ hǎo! Wǒ jiào Chén Lǐmǐn. Wǒ shì Xiānggǎng-rén. Wǒ zhù zài Xiānggǎng Lì Yè Lù 8 hào. Wǒde diànhuà hàomǎ shì 507 1293.
Speaker 2: Nǐ hǎo! Wǒ jiào Wú Yìfēi. Wǒ shì Shànghǎi-rén. Wǒde diànhuà hàomǎ shì 874 3659. Wǒ zhù zài Shànghǎi Nánjīng Lù 9 hào.
Speaker 3: Wǒ jiào Guō Wànjí. Wǒ shì Fǎguó-rén. Wǒ zhù zài Běijīng Héping Lù 6 hào. Wǒde diànhuà hàomǎ shì 724 6274.
- 4 a Běijīng Cháoyáng Lù èr hào, Lǐ Mínglǐ lǎoshī. b Sūzhōu Lóngshāi Lù jiǔ hào, Dōngfāng Fàndiàn sān-bā-sì fángjiān, Zhào Huá xiānsheng. c Nánjīng Xīchéng Qū Héping Lù wǔ hào, Zhào Jiābǎo xiǎojiē.
- 5 a iii, b vii, c i, d v, e ii, f iv, g vi.

Quick review

- a Tā shì shéi? b Nǐ zhù (zài) nǎr?
c Wǒ bú zhù (zài) Lúndūn.
d Nǐde diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao?
e Diànhuà shì shénme yìsì?
f Zhè shì wǒde fēijī piào.

Unit 4

Let's try

- a Nǐ zhù zài shénme fàndiàn? (Nǐ zhù zài) jǐ hào fángjiān?
b Zhè shì wǒde míngpiàn.

- 1 a èrshíjiǔ, b qīshíyī, c sānshí'èr.
2 a èrshíyī, b qīshí, c liùshíliù, d sìshíbā e sānshí, f liùshí, g shíwǔ, h sānshísān.
3 Dīng Fèng is married. She's got two children, a son and a daughter. Her son is called Dīng Míng and is 12 this year. Her daughter's name is Dīng Yīng. She is 14 years old.
4 a Méi yǒu. b Méi yǒu. c Bú shì (Tā bú shì lǎoshī.) d Wǒ méi yǒu hái zi. e Wǒ méi yǒu dìdi.
5 a Are you married? = iv b How old is she? = iii c What's Mr Wang, the teacher, called? = i d Have you any children? = v e Has Mrs Li a daughter? = ii
6 Wǒ jiào Mǎlì, jīnnián shíqī suì. Wǒ méi yǒu jiějie, méi yǒu mèimei. Wǒ yǒu yí ge gēge, yí ge dìdi. Wǒ gēge jiào Hēnglì. Tā èrshí suì. Wǒ dìdi jiào Bídé. Tā shíwǔ suì. Wǒmen dōu shì xuésheng.

Quick review

- a Nǐ hǎo! b Nǐ jiào shénme? c Nǐ duō dà?
d Nǐ yǒu xiōngdì jiěmèi ma? e Xièxie (nǐ). f Zàijiàn!

Unit 5

Let's try

- a Chén xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo ma? Nǐ jiào shénme míngzi? Nǐ huì bu huì shuō Yǐngwén? Nǐ zhù zài nǎr? Nǐ jié hūn le ma? Nǐ yǒu hái zi ma? Nǐ(de) hái zi jǐ suì/duō dà? Nǐde diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao/shénme? Nǐ rènshi bu rènshi X? Nǐ shì Běijīng-/Shànghǎi-/Guǎngdōng-rén ma? Nǐ bàba\ māmā dōu zài (Běijīng) ma?
- b liùshísi, èrshíjiǔ, wǔshíqī, sānshíbā, shí'èr, jiùshíwǔ, sìshí, èr, qīshísān, shí.
- 1 a yīyuè yī hào, b shí'èr yuè èrshíwǔ hào, c sānyuè bā hào, d shíyuè yī hào.
- 3 a September 9th b Sunday morning, c Thursday, November 28th, d 10.45am Saturday, e 3.30pm Friday, July 6th, f 11am Monday, December 31st.
- 4 a Wǔ diǎn yí kè; wǔ diǎn shíwǔ fēn. b Chà wǔ fēn wǔ diǎn; sì diǎn wǔshíwǔ fēn. c (Hái yǒu) sìshí fēnzhōng. d Zǎoshang wǔ diǎn líng wǔ fēn. e Wǔ diǎn líng qī fēn.

Quick review

- a Sānyuè sānshí hào. b Xīngqīsi. c Sì diǎn èrshíqī fēn.
d Sì diǎn sān kè or chà yí kè wǔ diǎn. Dī sān zhàntái.
e Sì diǎn wǔshí fēn or Wǔ diǎn chà shí fēn. Dì-yī zhàntái.

Unit 6

Let's try

- 1 Wǒ yào xīngqīsì shàngwǔ jiǔ diǎn bàn de huǒchē piào.
 2 a yī-jiǔ-jiǔ-qī nián yīyuè liù hào b èr-líng-líng-líng nián sānyuè èrshíyī hào c yī-jiǔ-sì-sān nián bāyuè shíwǔ hào.
- 1 a Tā zài mǎi dōngxi. b Tāmen zài kàn zàjì. c Tā zài huàn qián. d Tā zài dǎ tàijiquán. e Tāmen zài kàn diànyǐng. f Tā zài tīng yīnyuè.
- 3 a bù yíyàng (gāo), b yíyàng (dà), c bù yíyàng (zhòng), d bù yíyàng (gāo), e yíyàng (zhòng), f yíyàng (dà).
- 4 a Bú duì. Xǔ bǐ Hú gāo. b Bú duì. Hú bǐ Qū zhòng. c Bú duì. Tāmen yíyàng dà. d Duì. e Duì.
- 5 a Xīngqítiān, b xīngqīsì xiàwǔ, c xīngqīsān wǎnshang, d shàngwǔ, e xīngqīliù.

Quick review

- a Nǐ míngtiān xiǎng zuò shénme?
 b Xiǎo Mǎ gēn tā jiějie yíyàng gāo.
 c Wǒ juéde zàjì bǐ jīngjù yǒu yìsì.
 d Xiǎo Zhào, jīntiān wǎnshang nǐ xiǎng qù nǎr?
 e Lǐ xiǎojie, nǐ xiǎng qù kàn diànyǐng háishi tīng yīnyuèhuì?

Unit 7

Let's try

- a Nǐmen xiǎng tīng yīnyuèhuì háishi kàn xì?
 b Nǐmen xǐhuan (tīng) Xīfāng yīnyuè ma? Nǐmen xǐhuan bu xǐhuan (tīng) Xīfāng yīnyuè? c Zài Xīfāng dāngrán tīng Xīfāng yīnyuè.
- 1 a wǔ máo èr (fēn), b liǎng/èr kuài liǎng/èr máo wǔ, c shí'èr kuài qī máo liù, d jiǔshíjiǔ kuài jiǔ máo jiǔ, e èr/liǎngbǎi líng wǔ kuài wǔ máo sì. f bā kuài líng qī (fēn).
- 2 a Píngguǒ jiùshí biànshì yì jīn. b Pútáo yí bàng sì-jiǔ yì jīn. c Cǎoméi yí bàng qī-wǔ yì hé. d Xiāngjiāo wǔshíbā biànshì yì jīn.
- 3 a Xīhóngshì zěnme mài? b Báicài yì jīn duōshao qián? c Tǔdòu duōshao qián yì jīn?
- 4 **Recording:** a Yú zěnme mài? Qī kuài líng jiǔ yì jīn. b Cǎoméi duōshao qián yì hé? Qī kuài sì yì hé. c Báicài yì jīn duōshao qián? Yí kuài èr yì jīn. d Pútáo guì bu guì? Bú guì. Yí kuài jiǔ yì jīn. e Wǒ mǎi liǎng jīn tǔdòu. Sān kuài èr.

- 5 a Tài dà le! b Tài rè le! c Tāde qián tài duōle! d (Piào) tài guì le! e Fǎwén tài nán le!
 6 a Pútáo bǐ píngguǒ guì (yìdiǎnr). b Xiǎo Wáng bǐ Lǎo Lǐ gāo yìdiǎnr. c Běijīng bǐ Lúndūn rè duōle. d Bái xiānsheng bǐ Bái tàitai dà deduō.
 7 a jiù, b jiù, c cái, d jiù, e cái.

Quick review

- a Zhǐ yào wǔ fēnzhōng jiù dào.
 b Yào/děi wúshí fēnzhōng cái dào.
 c Zài wǒ jiǎ wǒ bàba zuì dà.
 d Diànyǐngyuàn lí wǒ jiā bù yuǎn.
 e Xiāngjiāo sìshíjiǔ biànshì yí bàng.

Unit 8

Let's try

- 1 No, she didn't. One was too big, one was too small, and one was too expensive.
 2 He said his apples were a little bigger, his grapes were much sweeter, his strawberries were a lot fresher, and his things were the best.
- 1 a v, b vi, c iv, d i, e ii, f vii, g iii.
 2 a yí jiàn bái chèn yī, b yí jiàn huáng dài yī, c yì táo lán xī fú, d yì tiáo lǜ qún zi, e yì shuāng hēi xié, f yì tiáo hóng kù zi.
 3 Xiǎo Cài is wearing a white shirt, a blue skirt, and a pair of red leather shoes. Xiǎo Zhào is wearing a blue silk shirt, black trousers, and green cloth shoes. Lǎo Fāng is wearing a black suit, a white shirt, and a pair of black leather shoes.
 4 a Lǎo Mǎ chuān yì shuāng hēi pí xié, yí jiàn lán chèn yī. b Xiǎo Qián chuān yí jiàn hóng chèn yī, (yì tiáo) hēi kù zi, yì shuāng bù xié. c Liú xiānsheng chuān yí táo huī xī fú, huáng chèn yī, zōng pí xié.
 5 a Lǐ xiānsheng Déwén (*German*) shuō-de fēicháng hǎo. b Zhāng tàitai jiàqī guò-de bú tài hǎo. c Cháo xiǎojie Yīngwén xué-de kuài-jíle. d Mǎlì yòng kuàizi yòng-de bù zěnmeyàng. e Hēnglì shuō Rìyǔ shuō-de hěn qīngchū.
 6 a Zhāng Tóng de diànshì méi yǒu Mǎ Fēng de diànshì guì, yě méi yǒu Mǎ Fēng de diànshì dà. b Mǎ Fēng méi yǒu Zhāng Tóng gāo. Zhāng Tóng méi yǒu Mǎ Fēng dà, yě méi yǒu tā zhòng. c Mǎ Fēng de zì méi yǒu Zhāng Tóng de zì qīngchū.

Quick review

- Nǐde Yīngwén shuō-de zhēn hǎo.
- Zhè jiàn chèn yī tài xiǎo le.
- Nǐde jiàqī guò-de zěnmeyàng?
- Yīnggélán bǐ Ài'ěr lán dà.
- Déguó méi yǒu Fǎguó dà.

Unit 9**Let's try**

- a Jiùshíjiǔ kuài. b Sān zhāng zúqiú piào.
- a Fǎguó de dōngxī bǐ Yīngguó de (dōngxī) guì. Fǎguó de dōngxī méi yǒu Yīngguó de (dōngxī) guì. Fǎguó de dōngxī gēn Yīngguó de (dōngxī) yíyàng guì. b Nǎli, nǎli, shuō-de bù hǎo. (or Xièxie.)
- Recording:** First walk southwards. When you get to East Sea Road, turn east. Pass two blocks and you will find the cinema on the south side of the road opposite the department store. The answer is F.
- Wǎng xī zǒu, guò liǎng ge lùkǒu, wǎng běi guǎi. Fàndiàn jiù zài lù de dōngbian.
- B = school; C = shop; D = Donghai Park; E = Bank of China.
- a Fǎguó hé Yìdàlì. b Sì tiān. c Gēn tāde Fǎguó péngyou. Tāmen kāi chē qù. d Yí gè xīngqī. e Zuò fēijī. f Kāi chē.
Recording: Mr White is going on holiday soon. He is going to two places. He'll first go from London to Paris by train. He plans to stay in Paris for four days. After that he and his French friend will drive to Italy. They will stay in Italy for a week. Lastly he will fly back to London from Italy. His friend will drive back to France.

Quick review

- Qù Zhōngguó Yínháng zěnmē zǒu?
- Zuò shí lù (gōnggòng) qīchē. c Zuò wǔ zhàn.
- Wǒde péngyou méi (yǒu) qù-guo Zhōngguó.
- Kuài (yào) xià yǔ le.

Unit 10**Let's try**

- a Wǒ xiān zuò fēijī qù Xiānggǎng. Zài nàr zhù liǎng tiān.
b Ránhòu (cóng Xiānggǎng) zuò huǒchē qù Shànghǎi. c Wǒ dǎsuàn bāyuè shí hào (cóng Shànghǎi) zuò fēijī qù Běijīng.
- Nǐ qù-guo Shànghǎi ma? Nǐ qù-guo Shànghǎi méi you?

- Recording:** Mr. Jones ordered yúxiāng ròusī (fish flavoured shredded meat), zhàcài tāng (preserved vegetable soup) and Wúxīng píjiǔ (Fivestar beer).
- a yì wǎn chǎomiàn, b sì píng pútáojiǔ, c wǔ tīng kěkǒukèlè, d liù zhī yān, e liǎng wǎn tāng, f sān zhāng piào.
- a Fúwùyuán, qǐng jié zhàng. b Chī-hǎo le. Xièxie. c Nǐ suàncuò le ba. d Méi guānxi.
- a bù, b méi, c méi, d bù.

Halfway review

- 1066, 1462, 1798, 1914, 1945, 2000, 2008.
- a Tāmen shì bu shì jiěmèi? Tāmen shì jiěmèi ma? b Tāde chǎomiàn hǎochī bu hǎochī? Tāde chǎomiàn hǎochī ma? c Míngtiān tā tàitai qù bu qù mǎi dōngxī? Míngtiān tā tàitai qù mǎi dōngxī ma? d Nǐ rènshi bu rènshi tā? Nǐ bú rènshi tā ma? e Xiǎo Lǐ yǒu mei yǒu yì tiáo hóng kùzi? Xiǎo Lǐ yǒu yì tiáo hóng kùzi ma?
- a Y, b X, c Y, d X.
- a = v, b = i, c = ii, d = vi, e = iii, f = iv
- a Méi qù-guo. b Qù Měiguó le. c Huì shuō. d Qù-guo. e Bù chōu le. f Chī-guo. g Qù Zhōngguó hé Ribēn.

Unit 11

- a 2, b 6, c 10, d 5, e 11, f 24, g 83, h 69, i 57, j 36.
- a 三 b 八 c 十 d 十五 e 四十二 f 九十八 g 六十七
- a 天 b 三 c 六 d 四
- a 天/日, b 期 c 期 d 星 e 星
- a 3 November, b 16 June c 11 July d 14 October e 29 August
- a 十二月二十五日 b 三月八日
- a 2008, b 1937 c 1949 d 1995 e 1642
- a 9:15, b 12:25, c 6:30 d 3:50, e 7:45
- a 六点二十分, b 差一刻十二点, (十一点三刻, 十二点差一刻)
c 十点十分, d 四点四十八分, e 七点半.

Unit 12

- a lǚguǎn, lǚdiàn, fàndiàn, bīngguǎn. b Lǚ means *travel*. Diàn and guǎn both mean *house*. Fàn means *food*. Bīn means *guest*. c No. d It says there are all kinds of reasons. e Chinese people can stay in any hotel.
- a Duì. b Bú duì. c Duì. d Duì (UK); Bú duì (USA). e Duì.
- a Wǒ shì sān-líng-yāo fángjiān de (*your name*). Wǒde fángjiān tài xiǎo le. Néng bu néng huàn yì jiān dà yìdiǎn de?

- b Shuāngrén fángjiān duōshao qián yì tiān? c Tài guì le. Hái yǒu, wǒde fángjiān lǐ zěnme méi yǒu diànshì? d Zúqiú sài bàn ge xiǎoshí yǐhòu jiù kāishǐ le!
- 4 a Nǐ néng bu néng gěi wǒ sòng lái yìdiǎnr chī de/ yìdiǎnr hē de/ yì bēi chá, jiā nǎi, bù jiā táng/ liǎng ge sǎnmíngzhì, yì ge nǎilào de, yì ge huǒtuǐ de? b Nǐ néng bu néng dǎ diànhuà jiàoxǐng wǒ/ gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà/ gěi wǒ mǎi yì píng jiǔ/ zài gěi wǒ yì tiáo tǎnzi/ yì juǎn wèishēngzhǐ/ yì kuài dà yìdiǎnr de xiāngzào/ yì ge rèshuǐpíng?
- 5 a Dōngfāng, b pretty good, c not at all good, d not polite, e three times.
- 6 a Wǒ xīwàng nǐmen hái yǒu fángjiān. b Yì jiān shuāngrén fángjiān, yì jiān dānrén fángjiān. c Sān, sì tiān. Wǒ míngtiān gàosu nǐ wǒmen shénme shíhou zǒu, kěyǐ ma? d Bù, wǒmen yǐjīng chī le.

Quick review

- a Bāo zǎocān ma?
 b Wǔfàn shì jǐ diǎn? Wǔfàn shì shénme shíhou?
 c Fángjiān lǐ yǒu diànshì ma?
 d Nǐmen yǒu méi yǒu (yì jiān) dà yìdiǎnr de dānrén fángjiān?
 e Yì tiān/wǎnshang duōshao qián?

Unit 13

- 1 a ruǎnwò, b yìngzuò, c ruǎnzuò, d yìngwò, e tóuděng, f èrděng, g passenger train, h special express, i train, j express, k express.
- 2 a trains no. 13, no. 21 and no. 161. b tèkuài, c No. d sǎnbǎi wǔshíyī cì, or sǎn-wǔ-yāo cì, e No.
- 3 **Qǐng wèn, hái yǒu:** a jǐntiān wǎnshang de diànyǐng piào, b shíyuè sì hào de fēijī piào, c yāo-wǔ-sān cì de huǒchē piào, d qù Tiānjīn de huǒchē piào. **Wǒ mǎi:** e sǎn zhāng jǐntiān wǎnshang de diànyǐng piào, f sì zhāng shíyuè sì hào de fēijī piào, g wǔ zhāng yāo-wǔ-sān cì de huǒchē piào, h liù zhāng qù Tiānjīn de huǒchē piào.
- 4 a Yǒu liǎng zhǒng (huǒchē) piào: tóuděng hé èrděng. b Tóuděng piào bǐ èrděng piào guì. c Zài Yīngguó huǒchē yòu kuài yòu shūfu. or Yīngguó de huǒchē yòu kuài yòu shūfu.
- 6 a Nǐ néng bu néng gàosu wǒ tā zhù nǎr? b Nǐ néng bu néng gàosu wǒ nǐde diànhuà hàomǎ? c Nǐ néng bu néng gàosu wǒ tā nǚ'ér duō dà le? d Nǐ néng bu néng gàosu wǒ tāmen yào zhù duō cháng shíjiān?

- 7 a Zuò huǒchē qù Xī'an duōshao qián? b Cóng Lúndūn dào Shànghǎi zuò fēijī děi duō cháng shíjiān? c Zuò chūzūchē qù Héping Bīngguǎn děi duōshao qián? d Cóng Ribēn dào Zhōngguó zuò chuán yào/děi duō cháng shíjiān?

Quick review

a = iii, b = iv, c = v, d = vii, e = ii, f = i, g = vi.

The new word is **chángtǔ qìchē** (coach).

Unit 14

- 1 a Zhōngguó-rén qǐ-de hěn zǎo ma? b Zǎoshang nǐ qù nǎr? c Lǎo rén zài gōngyuán zuò shénme? d Nǐ(men) zài hú lí yóuyǒng ma?
- 3 a Wǒ xǐhuan zuò huǒchē, gèng xǐhuan zuò fēijī, zuì xǐhuan zuò chuán. b Wǒ bù xǐhuan qí mǎ, gèng bù xǐhuan qí zìxíngchē, zuì bu xǐhuan qí mótuóchē. c Wǒ bù xǐhuan zuò chūzūchē, gèng bù xǐhuan zuò dìtiě, zuì bù xǐhuan zuò gōnggòng qìchē. d Wǒ xǐhuan kàn jīngjù, gèng xǐhuan kàn diànshì, zuì xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng. e Wǒ xǐhuan tīng liúxíng yīnyuè, gèng xǐhuan tīng xiàndài yīnyuè, zuì xǐhuan tīng gǔdiǎn yīnyuè.
- 4 qiūtiān,/ lǔxíng,/ hái,/ méi,/ háishi,/ yòu,/ yòu,/ piányi,/ zìyóu,/ bù,/ bàn,/ dīng/mǎi,/ zhǎo/ dīng.
- 5 a Xiǎo Wáng, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn. b Nǐ zuìjìn zài zuò shénme? c Nǐ jié hūn le ma? d Nǐ zài dēng shéi? e Wǒ qù yóuyǒng. f Zàijiàn!
- 6 A yì pái èrshíwǔ hào; èr pái wǔ hào; sān pái èrshíliù hào. B èrshísì pái èrshísì hào; èrshíwǔ pái sì hào; èrshíliù pái èrshísān hào. C Lóushàng shíyī pái liù hào; lóushàng shí'èr pái èrshíbā hào; lóushàng shísān pái èrshíyī hào.
- 7 a A pái shí'èr hào, b J pái sānshíqī hào, c lóushàng F pái sìshí hào, d K pái èr hào.
- 8 a Shíyuè èrshíwǔ hào xīngqīliù wǎnshang liù diǎn, bā diǎn hé shí diǎn. Diànyǐng jiào (is called) 《Dōngtiān》. Diànyǐng piào wǔ bàng, liù bàng wǔ yì zhāng. b Shíyuè èrshíwǔ hào xīngqīliù wǎnshang qī diǎn yì kè. Huàjù jiào 《Wǒmen niánqīng de shíhou》. Huàjù piào yì zhāng shí bàng, shí'èr bàng wǔ. c Shíyuè èrshíliù hào xīngqītiān wǎnshang qī diǎn bàn. Bālèi 《Tiān'é Hú》. Piào yì zhāng shí'èr bàng, shíbā bàng hé èrshíwǔ bàng. d Shíyuè èrshíliù hào xīngqīrì wǎnshang bā diǎn. Gējù 《Kǎmén》. Yì zhāng piào shíliù bàng, èrshísì bàng hé sānshí bàng.

Quick review

- a Go to see a film. b No, because she had already seen it.
c Chinese music or Western music. d No.
e To go dancing.

Unit 15

- 1 a Nǐ kěyǐ zài yóujú cún qián, qǔ qián. b Yīngguó de yóujú xīngqīliù xiàwǔ hé xīngqītiān yībān bù kāi mén. c Zài Yīngguó xìntǒng shì hóngsè de, bú shì lǜsè de. d Zài Yīngguó bù kěyǐ zài yóujú dǎ chángtú diànhuà.
2 a Zhè ge bāoguǒ jì dào Měiguó. b Dōu shì shū. c Yào duōshao/jǐ tiān? d Wǒ xiǎng mǎi míngxìnpian. Duōshao qián yí tài? e Wǒ yào yí tài dà de, liǎng tài xiǎo de. f Gěi nín liǎng/èr bǎi kuài. g Xièxie. Zàijiàn.
3 a Qǐng wèn, kěyǐ zài zhèr dǎ (ge) diànhuà ma? Qǐng wèn, kěyǐ zài zhèr jì (ge) bāoguǒ ma? Qǐng wèn, kěyǐ zài zhèr fā (ge) e-mail (diànzǐ yóujiàn) ma? b Qǐng gěi wǒ nǐde diànhuà hàomǎ. Qǐng gěi wǒ tāmende wǎngzhǐ. Qǐng gěi wǒ nǐde hùzhào. Qǐng gěi wǒ tāmende dìzhǐ. c Qǐng dào nèibiān huàn qián. Qǐng dào wàibiān dǎ diànhuà.
4 a Héping Bīngǔǎn. b Bái Huá xiānsheng. c There is no such extension number. d The caller had got the number wrong.
5 a Bú duì. b Duì. c Duì. d Bú duì.
6 a Qǐng wèn, jìntiān yīngbàng hé rénmínbì de duìhuànlǜ shì duōshao? b Qǐng wèn, jìntiān měiyuán hé rénmínbì de duìhuànlǜ shì duōshao? c Qǐng wèn, jìntiān gǎngbì hé rénmínbì de duìhuànlǜ shì duōshao? d Qǐng wèn, jìntiān ōuyuán hé rénmínbì de duìhuànlǜ shì duōshao?
7 a yìbǎi bǐ bābǎi wǔshí; yìbǎi měiyuán huàn bābǎi wǔshí yuán. b yìbǎi bǐ yìbǎi líng bā; yìbǎi gǎngbì huàn yìbǎi líng bā yuán. c yìbǎi bǐ yìqiān sānbǎi èrshí; yìbǎi yīngbàng huàn yìqiān sānbǎi èrshí yuán. d yìbǎi bǐ jiǔbǎi yìshí; yìbǎi ōuyuán huàn jiǔbǎi yìshí yuán.
8 a Wǒ xiǎng huàn yìbǎi yīngbàng de rénmínbì. b Wǒ xiǎng huàn èrbǎi měiyuán de rénmínbì. c Wǒ xiǎng huàn wǔbǎi gǎngbì de rénmínbì. d Wǒ xiǎng huàn liùwàn riyuán de rénmínbì. e Wǒ xiǎng huàn sībǎi ōuyuán de rénmínbì.

Quick review

- a Zhèi zhāng míngxìnpian jì dào Yīngguó duōshao qián?
b Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yí tài yóupiào.
c Jìntiān yīngbàng hé rénmínbì de duìhuànlǜ shì duōshao?

- d Wǒ xiǎng huàn yìbǎi wǔshí yīngbàng de rénmínbì.
e Wǒde fēnjī shì èr-yāo-yāo-wǔ.

Unit 16

- 1 a hē jiǔ, chī rè fàn, rè cài, hē tāng, b hē tāng, chī zhèngcān, chī shuǐguō, c wǎn/kuàizi, d dāochā/pánzi, e Zhōngguó-rén.
2 a Zhè shì gěi nǐ de (yì hé) qiǎokèlì. Zhè hé qiǎokèlì shì gěi nǐ de. b Zhè shì gěi nǐ de (yì píng) jiǔ. Zhè píng jiǔ shì gěi nǐ de. c Zhè shì gěi nǐ de (liǎng zhāng) diànyǐng piào. Zhè liǎng zhāng diànyǐng piào shì gěi nǐ de. d Zhè shì gěi nǐ de (yì hé) lǜ chá. Zhè hé lǜ chá shì gěi nǐ de. e Zhè shì gěi nǐ de (yì běn) shū. Zhè běn shū shì gěi nǐ de.
3 a Zhè shì gěi wǒ jiějie de (yì hé) qiǎokèlì. Zhè hé qiǎokèlì shì gěi wǒ jiějie de. b Zhè shì gěi tā tàitai de (yì hé) lǜ chá. Zhè hé lǜ chá shì gěi tā tàitai de. c Zhè shì gěi tā shūshu de (yì běn) shū. Zhè běn shū shì gěi tā shūshu de. d Zhè shì gěi tā nán péngyou de (yì píng) jiǔ. Zhè píng jiǔ shì gěi tā nán péngyou de. e Zhè shì gěi nǐmende péngyou de (liǎng zhāng) diànyǐng piào. Zhè liǎng zhāng diànyǐng piào shì gěi nǐmende péngyou de. f Zhè shì gěi tāmēn gōngsī de (yì fú) huà. Zhè fú huà shì gěi tāmēn gōngsī de.
4 a Gān bēi! b Wǒ chī-bu-xià le. c Zhēn xiāng a! d Wǒ zìjǐ lái. e Zhù nǐ wànshìrúyì!
5 a Wǒ gāi zǒu le. b Hái zǎo ne. Zài zuò yìhuìr ba. c Gěi nǐmēn tiān máfan le. d Méi shénme (máfan). e Bú yòng le. Qǐng huí qù ba. f Lùshang xiǎoxīn. g Mǎn zǒu. Mǎn zǒu.
6 a = iii, b = i, c = v, d = ii, e = vi, f = iv.

Quick review

- a Wishing you good health! To your good health!
b Wishing you a happy life!
c Wishing you every happiness!
d May your work go smoothly/well!
e Wishing you success! To your success!
f To our friendship!
g To our co-operation!

Unit 17

- 1 a Duì. b Duì. c Duì. d Bú duì.
2 a Wǒ tóu téng. b Wǒ yǒu (yì) diǎnr késou. c Wǒ yě juéde shì gǎnmào. d Wǒ méi chī-guo Zhōngyào. Zhōngyào yǒu xiào ma? e Hǎo ba. (Xíng.) Wǒ shishi ba.

- 3 a before/twice/one ball, b after/4 times/3 tablets, c one hour after meal/3 times/one spoonful, d twice (early morning and evening)/2-3 tablets.
 4 a quite a few, b all sorts of, c headaches, d was scared.
 6 a = iv, b = v, c = i, d = iii, e = vi, f = ii.

Quick review

- a Nǐn nǎr bù shūfu? b Wǒ xiǎng shìshi zhēnjiū.
 c Wǒ juéde wǒ gǎnmào le. d Wǒ méi chí-guo Zhōngyào.
 e Wǒ yǒu shíhou tóu téng.

Unit 18

- 1 a Zài Yīngguó kāi chē hé qí zìxíngchē dōu zǒu lù de zuǒbiān.
 b Zhè gēn zài Rìběn hé Ài'ěr'lán yíyàng, gēn zài Ōuzhōu dàlù bù yíyàng. c Měiguó shì shìjiè shàng qìchē zuì duō de guójiā.
 d Zài Xīfāng zū qìchē bù nán.
 2 a Wǒ xiǎng zū yí liàng chē. b Yǒu. Shì Yīngguó de (jiàzhào).
 c Wǒ xiǎng zū yí liàng xiǎo de (or) xiǎo chē. d Kěyǐ. e Liǎng tiān. f Nǐmen shǒu bu shǒu xìnyòng kǎ?
 3 a Kāi chē shàng bān yào/děi yí ge xiǎoshí. b Bǔ chēdài yào/děi duōshao qián? c Zuò gōnggòng qìchē dào Xiāngshān zěnme qù? d Zū zìxíngchē yào/děi sānshí kuài.
 4 a Bú duì. b Duì. c Duì. d Duì. e Duì. f Bú duì. g Bú duì.
 5 a He'd lost his bag. b His passport, wallet, credit card, some money, and a small camera. c More than 400 yuan and 200 US dollars. d Yulong Hotel. e Report its loss to his Embassy. f Inform him once they'd got any news.
 6 a Tāde chēdài huài le. b Tāde chē huài le. c Tāde bāo diū le. d Tāmen zhuàng chē le. e Tā tóu téng. f Tāde chē dēng huài le.

Quick review

- a Zhēn dǎoméi!
 b Bú shì wǒde cuò.
 c Wǒ xiǎng tāmen yīnggāi qù zhǎo jǐngchá.
 d Wǒde xìnyòng kǎ diū le.
 e Wǒde zìxíngchē huài le. Nín néng bu néng bāng wǒ kàn(yi)kan?

Unit 19

- 1 a = iv, b = vi, c = i, d = vii, e = iii, f = v, g = ii.
 2 a Hānzú, Hànyǔ; b fāngyán, kǒuyīn; c Guóyǔ, Huáyǔ; d yǔyán, Hànyǔ.

- 1 a Fluent with good pronunciation and tones. b Three years. c Not good (according to himself). d Six years. e Her learning method(s). f Her husband.
 4 a Hánguó, pípa, èrhú; b Yīngguó, shǎoshù mínzú; c Rìběn, Zhōngguó jīngjì; d fānyì, jìzhě; e wénxué, zhéxué, wénxué, zhéxué.
 6 a Wǒ huì shuō Déwén (hé Fǎwén). b Wǒde Riyǔ búcuò or Wǒde Yìdàliyǔ shuō-de bú tài liúli. c Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr Èyǔ. d Wǒ shuō Zhōngwén shuō-de yǒu (yìdiǎnr) Měiguó kǒuyīn. e Fǎyǔ de yǔyīn hěn nán.

Quick review

- a Nǐ juéde Yīngwén (de) yǔyīn nán ma?
 b Wǒ zhǐ huì xiě jǐ ge/yìxiē Hànzì.
 c Wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr Zhōngwén, kěshì wǒ juéde shēngdiào hěn nán.
 d Nǐ hěn qiǎnxū. (Nǐ tài qiǎnxū le.)
 e Wǒ juéde tāde kǒuyīn hěn nán dòng.
 f Nǐde Yīngyǔ/Fǎyǔ/Déyǔ búcuò.
 g Nǐ guòjiāng le.

Unit 20

- 1 a sānyuè, wǔyuè b liùyuè, qīyuè, bāyuè c jiǔyuè, shíyuè, shíyīyuè d shí'èryuè, èryuè.
 3 a Bú duì. b Duì. c Bú duì. d Duì. e Bú duì.
 5 a = v, b = iv, c = ii, d = i, e = iii.
 7 a huǒchē; b huǒchē, fēiji; c huǒchē, chángtú qìchē; d fēiji, huǒchē; e fēiji.
 8 a Tā míngtiān zuò huǒchē qù Shànghǎi. b Wǒde péngyou zuò gōnggòng qìchē lái wǒ jiā. c Wǒ bù qí zìxíngchē qù gōngyuán. d Tāmen chángcháng kāi/zuò chē qù mǎi dōngxī. e Wǒ xiànzài zuò dìtiē huì jiā.
 9 a Wǒ xiǎng qù Xiānggǎng hé Àomén. b Wǒ (xiān) zuò fēiji qù Xiānggǎng, zài zuò chuán qù Àomén. c Nǎr/nàli bāyue hěn rè. d Yǒu shíhou xià yǔ. e Wǒ hái méi juéding(ne).
 10 a Shì. b Shì. c Hěn duǎn yě hěn nuǎnhuo, kěshì chángcháng guā fēng. d Bú shì. e Qiūtiān bù lěng yě bú rè. Qīngtiān duō, yīntiān shǎo. Bù cháng guā fēng, yě hěn shǎo xià yǔ.

Quick review

- a Zuótiān shàngwǔ xià yǔ le, qìwēn èrshí dù.
 b Zuótiān wǎnshàng guā fēng le, qìwēn wǔ dù.
 c Jìntiān shàngwǔ shì qīngtiān, qìwēn shí'èr dù.

- d Jintiān xiàwǔ yǒu xiǎo yǔ, qìwēn shíbā dù.
 e Míngtiān yīntiān, qìwēn sān dù.
 f Xià xīngqīyī yǒu/xià xuě, qìwēn líng dù.

Unit 21

- 1 a Yuè lái yuè duō de Zhōngguó-rén lái Yīngguó xué.
 b Tāmen hěn duō rén duì Yīngguó de lìshǐ hé wénhuà yǒu xīngqū. c Měi nián hěn duō wàiguó xuésheng lái Yīngguó xuéxí Yīngwén. d Yuè lái yuè duō de Ōuzhōu gōngsī xiān zài Zhōngguó kuòdà shēngyì.
 5 a Liǎng ge xīngqī. b Wǒ qù le Běijīng, Shànghǎi hé Guǎngzhōu. c Shànghǎi fāzhǎn-de hěn kuài. d Běijīng yǒu hěn duō gōngyuán. Wǒ hěn xīhuan tāmen. e Guǎnlín de fēngjǐng měi jǐle.
 6 a Bú duì. b Bú duì. c Duì. d Bú duì.

Final review

- 1 a rè b lǎo c pàng d chǎo e guì f wēixiǎn g jìn h nuǎn(huǒ)
 i wǎn j ruǎn k qián l yǐhòu m shàng n yòu o nán p xībēi.
 2 a = iv, b = iii, c = v, d = i, e = ii.
 3 a mobile, b computer, c advertise/advertisement, d video recorder, e job guaranteed for life, f thermos flask, g aerial, antenna.
 4 a 8:30pm the day before yesterday b 1147 c 9764 3772
 d 2437 8910 e About a week f Next Thursday g 12:15pm
 i 7:10am on the 17th.
Recording: Ānní, wǒ shì Cài Míng. Wǒ yǐjīng dào le Guǎngzhōu. Wǒ shì qiántiān wǎnshàng bā diǎn bàn dào de. Wǒ xiànzài zhù zài Báiyún Bīngguǎn. Wǒ de fángjiān shì yāo-yāo-sì-qī. Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ dǎ ge diànhuà. Bīngguǎn de diànhuà shì jiǔ-qī-liù-sì sān-qī-qī-èr. Yàoshi wǒ bú zài fángjiān lǐ, qǐng nǐ dǎ wǒ de shǒujī. Wǒ de shǒujī hàomǎ shì èr-sì-sān-qī bā-jiǔ-yāo-líng. Wǒ huì zài Guǎngzhōu zhù chābuduō yí ge xīngqī. Xià xīngqīsi zhōngwǔ shí'èr diǎn yí kè zuò huóchē qù Shēnzhèn. Wǒ zài Shēnzhèn zhù liǎng tiān, ránhòu qù Xiānggǎng, shíqī hào zǎoshàng qī diǎn shí fēn zuò fēijī huí Lúndūn.
 5 a Wǒ chī-bu-guān là de cài. b Nǐ duì gǔdiǎn yīnyuè háishi duì liúxíng yīnyuè yǒu/gǎn xīngqū? c Yuè lái yuè duō de rén qù wàiguó dù jià. d Nǐ duì Yīngguó de yìxiàng zěnmeyàng? e Nǐ duì shènme (zuì) mǎnyì, shénme (zuì) bù mǎnyì? f Zhù nǐ shēngri kuàilè!

Chinese-English

The number after each vocabulary item indicates the unit in which it first appears.

- love; to love, to like very much 16
 Aierlán Ireland 3
 men (sometimes used in the People's Republic) husband/wife 10
 mǐng quiet 12
 pǎi arrangement, to arrange 20
 quán safe 9
 Aolímpikè Olympic 14
 Aolímpikè Olympic Games 14
 Yundònghuì
 Aomén Macao 9
 ba (particle indicating suggestion) 3
 bāba dad, father 4
 bǎi hundred 7
 bǎijiǔ strong alcohol 16
 bái(sè) (de) white 7
 báitiān daytime 20
 bàn half 5
 bàn to handle 14
 bāng to help 5
 bàng excellent 14
 bāo bag 18
 bāo to include; to make (jiǎozì) 21
 bāoguǒ parcel 15
 bēi a cup of; cup 10
 běi north 9
 běifāng the north 14
 bǐ compared to 6
 biān side 9
 biǎo form 12
 biǎoyǎn show, performance; to act/to perform 14
 bié don't 9
 bié rén other/another person 18
 biéde other 12
 bǐjiào relatively 12
 bǐjiào xīhuan to prefer 20
 bìng illness 17
 bīngqílín ice-cream 10
 bìngrén patient 17
 bù not 1
 bǔ chēdài to mend a tyre 18
 bú kèqǐ you are welcome 4
 bú xiàng not look it 4

bú xiè *not at all* 17
 bù xíng *not that good* 19
 bú yòng xiè *not at all*
 (lit. *no need thank*) 1
 bù zěnmeyàng *not so*
good 8
 búcuò *pretty good,*
not bad 7
 búguò *but, however* 12
 bùtóng de *different* 16

cái *not... until, only*
then 7
 cài *dish* 10
 càidān *menu* 10
 cānjiā *to attend* 17
 cāntīng *restaurant,*
canteen 12
 cǎoméi *strawberry* 7
 cèsuǒ *toilet* 12
 chá *to look up*
 (something) 15
 chá *tea* 16
 chà *lacking, short of* 5
 chàbuduō *similar* (lit.
different not much) 15
 cháng *long* 20
 chàng (gē) *to sing* (a song)
 14
 chàng jīngjù *to sing Peking*
opera 14
 cháng(chang) *to taste* 16
 chángcháng *often* 16
 Chángchéng *the Great*
Wall 10
 chángshòu (miàn) *long life*
(noodles) 21
 chángtú *long distance* 15
 chángtú qìchē *coach* 18
 chǎo *noisy* 12
 chǎomiàn *stir-fried*
noodles 10
 chāozhòng le *exceeded the*
weight limit 15

chē *vehicle* (bus, bike,
 car) 6
 chēdài *tyre* 18
 chèng *scales* 15
 chéng lǐ *in the city, in urban*
areas 18
 chénggōng *success,*
successful 16
 chéngshì *city* 18
 chēzhàn *bus/train stop or*
station 9
 chī *to eat* 10
 chī (yào) *to take*
 (medicine) 17
 chī-bǎo le *to eat one's*
fill 10
 chī de *something to*
eat 12
 chī fàn *to eat, eating* 16
 chī sù *to be vegetarian* 10
 chōu (yān) *to smoke*
 (a cigarette) 10
 chuán *ship, boat* 9
 chuánzhēn *fax* 15
 chúfáng *kitchen* 16
 chūntiān *spring* 20
 Chūnjié *the Spring Festival,*
Chinese New Year 5
 chūzū (qì)chē *taxi* 9
 cí *word* 12
 cì *measure word for*
trains 13
 cì *time, occasion* 12
 cóng *from* 9
 cónglái *ever* 20
 cōngmíng *clever* 19
 cún qián *to deposit*
money 15
 cuò *fault* 18

dà *big, old* 4
 dǎ diànhuà *to telephone* 12
 dǎ tàijīquán *to do Tai*
Chi 6

dabufen *majority* 16
 dàqū *approximately* 13
 dàbiāotuán *delegation* 20
 dàpā *everyone* 16
 dàng *to be; to work/to*
act as 20
 dangrán *of course* 2
 dānrén/shuāngrén
 fángjiān *single/double*
room 12
 dānwèi *work unit* 17
 dānyuànrúci *I hope*
so (four-character
 phrase) 14
 dào *to; to arrive,*
to go to 5, 7
 dāochā *knife and fork* 16
 dǎ pái *to play cards* 14
 dǎshǐguǎn *embassy* 18
 dāsuan *to plan* 9
 dàxiǎo *size* 8
 dàxué *university* 21
 de *possessive indicator* 2
 ... de shíhou *(the time)*
when... 12
 ... deduō *much (more)*
 ... 7
 Déguó *Germany* 3
 děi *to need, must;*
it takes 13
 dēng *lights* 18
 děng *to wait* 13
 děngděng *etc.* 14
 dì *for ordinal numbers* 5
 diǎn *o'clock* 5
 diǎn *to count* 15
 diànchē *tram* (lit. *electric*
vehicle) 18
 diànhuà *telephone* 3
 diànshì *television* 9
 diànyǐng *film, movie* 6
 diànzǐ yóujiàn *e-mail*
(electronic mail) 15
 dìdì *younger brother* 4

dìfang *place* 9
 dìng *to book* (a ticket) 6
 dìqū *district* 15
 dìtiě *underground/*
subway 18
 diū *to lose* 18
 dōng *east* 9
 dǒng *to understand* 21
 Dōngnányà *South-East*
Asia 19
 dǒngshìzhǎng *managing*
director 16
 dōngtiān *winter* 14
 dōngxi *thing, object* 6
 dōu *all, both* 5
 dòufu *beancurd, tofu* 10
 dù *degree* (°C) 20
 dù chē *(to be in a) traffic*
jam 18
 dù jià *to take a holiday* 9
 duì *yes, correct* 3
 duì to, for 10
 duìbuqǐ *excuse me/I'm*
sorry 1
 duìfu *to cope with* 18
 duìhuànlǜ *exchange*
rate 15
 duìmiàn *opposite* 9
 duō *many, more* 10
 duōshao? *how much,*
how many, what's the
number of? 3
 duō cháng? *how long?* 7
 duō yuǎn? *how far?* 7
 dùzi *tummy, stomach* 17

è *hungry* 10
 Èguó-rén *Russian*
 (person) 19
 èrděng *second-class*
 (ticket) 13
 èrhú *a two-stringed musical*
instrument 19
 érzi *son* 4

fā to send (a fax, e-mail etc.) 15
 fā chuánzhēn to send a fax 15
 fā fēng mad 9
 fādá developed 20
 Fāguó France 3
 fàn food, meal 12
 fàn hòu after meals 17
 fàn qián before meals 17
 fāndiàn hotel 3
 fàng to put 15
 fāngbiàn convenient 14
 fāngfǎ method 19
 fángjiān room 3
 fāngwèn visit; to visit (formal) 16
 fāngyán dialect 19
 fānyì interpreter, translator 19
 fǎnzheng no way, in any case 9
 fāzhǎn to develop 21
 fēicháng extremely 8
 fēijī plane 3
 fēn(zhōng) minute 5
 fēnchéng to divide to be divided into 17
 fēnháng branch (of a bank) 15
 fēng measure word for letters 15
 fēng wind 20
 fēngjǐng scenery 20
 fēngzhǎo chicken feet 16
 fù qián pay (money) 10
 fù zhàng to pay bills 15
 fūren wife (formal), madam 16
 fúwù service 12
 fúwútái reception 12
 fúwùyuan assistant, housestaff 6

fúyòng fāngfǎ instruction (for taking medicine) 17
 gān bēi! cheers! 16
 gānjìng clean 10
 gǎnmào to have a cold 17
 gàosu to tell 12
 gāoxìng happy 18
 gè measure word 4
 gēge elder brother 4
 gěi for; to give 6
 gēn and, with, to follow 6
 gèng even more 8
 gèzhǒng gèyàng de all kinds 12
 gōnggòng qìchē bus (lit. public together steam vehicle) 18
 gōngjīn kilogram 7
 gōngsī company 16
 gōngyuán park 14
 gōngzuò to work, work 20
 guā fēng windy (lit. blow wind) 20
 guǎi to turn 18
 guān (mén) to close (door) 5
 guānfāng official 19
 Guǎngdōng Canton (province) 3
 guāngpán CD 15
 guì expensive; honourable 2
 guò to pass, spend (of time) 8
 -guo have ever done (verbal, suffix) 9
 guójì international 15
 guójiā country 18
 guòjiǎng to exaggerate, to flatter 19
 guóyǔ national language 19

hái still 5
 hǎi kěyǐ just so so 8
 hǎushi or (used in question forms) 6
 hǎushi would be better 9
 hǎiyùn (to post) by sea 15
 hǎizi child/children 2
 hǎngkōng (to post) by air 15
 Hanguó-rén Korean (person) 19
 Hanzì Chinese characters 11, 17
 Hanzú Han nationality 19
 Hanzú-rén the Han people 19
 hào good, well 1
 hao number 3
 hào chī (de) delicious, tasty 10
 hào kǎn nice-looking 15
 haomǎ number (often used for telephone, telex, fax numbers and car registration plates) 3
 hào xiàng to seem 18
 he to drink 10
 hé and 4
 hé box 16
 he de something to drink 12
 hei(sè) (de) black 7
 hěn very 1
 héping peace 3
 hēshì suitable 8
 hézī qǐyè joint venture 21
 hēzuò co-operation, to co-operate 16
 hóng(sè) (de) red 7
 hòu later 16
 hòulái later 18
 hòutiān the day after tomorrow 13
 hú lake 14

Huá another word for China 19
 huá bīng to skate 14
 Huá-rén overseas Chinese people 19
 huài broken, not working; bad 18
 huán to return something to 12
 huàn to change 9
 huàn qián to change money 6
 huáng(sè) (de) yellow 7
 huānyíng to welcome 16
 huì can, be able to 2
 huì meeting 5
 huí guó to return to one's own country 20
 huí lái to come back 20
 huí qù to go back 16
 huò(zhě) or (used in statements) 16
 huǒchē train 5
 huódòng activity 14
 huōtuǐ ham 12
 hùshi nurse 17
 hùzhào passport 12
 jǐ how many? (usually less than ten) 4
 jǐ crowded 7
 jǐ several, a few 17
 jì to post 15
 jǐ hào? which number? 3
 jiā home 9
 jiā to add 12
 jià(qī) holiday, vacation 8
 jiān (measure word for rooms) 12
 jiàn (measure word for clothes) 7
 jiàn miàn to meet 20
 jiǎndān simple 19
 jiānglái in (the) future 15

- jiànkāng *health, healthy* 16
 jiào *to call, to be called* 2
 jiāotōng *transport traffic* 18
 jiàoxǐng *to (call to) wake up* 12
 jiàoxué *teaching* 21
 jiāozǐ (*Chinese*) *dumplings* 21
 jiè (yān) *to give up (smoking)* 10
 jié hūn *to marry* 4
 jié zhàng *to have the bill* 10
 jiějie *elder sister* 4
 jiěmèi *sisters* 4
 jièshào *to introduce; introduction* 19
 jīhuì *opportunity* 14
 jì(jié) *seasons* 20
 -jīle (*suffix*) *extremely* 10
 jīn *half a kilogram* 7
 jìn *to enter* 1
 jìn *near* 7
 jǐn(yì)jǐn *to tighten* 18
 jīngchá *police officer* 18
 jīngjì *economy* 19
 jīngjù *Peking opera* 6
 jīnglǐ *manager* 12
 jīnnián *this year* 4
 jīntiān *today* 1
 jīròu *chicken (meat)* 12
 jiǔ *alcohol* 16
 jiù *just; only* 7
 jiùshi *it's just that* 21
 jìzhě *journalist* 19
 juéde *to feel, to think* 8
 juéding *to decide* 14
 júzīzhī *orange juice* 10
 kāfēi *coffee* 12
 kāi *to drive* 13
 kāi (huì) *to have (a meeting)* 5
 kāi (mén) *to open (a door)* 5
 kāi xué *to start a term* 20
 kāishǐ *to start, start* 5
 kāishuǐ *boiled water* 17
 kàn *to look at, watch* 5
 kàn bìng *to see a doctor* 17
 kàn(yì)kàn *to have a look* 5
 kàn-jiàn *to see* 16
 kē *department (in a hospital)* 17
 kěkǒukèlè *Coca-Cola* 10
 kěnéng *possible, possibly* 15
 kèqǐ *polite* 16
 kěshì *but* 7
 késou *cough, to cough* 17
 kètīng *sitting room* 16
 kěxī *it's a pity* 5
 kǒuyīn *accent* 19
 kǔ *bitter* 17
 kuài (*Chinese unit of money*) 7
 kuài *fast* 8
 kuàilè *happy* 21
 kuàizi *chopsticks* 10
 kuòdà *to expand* 21
 là *hot, spicy* 10
 lā dùzi *to have diarrhoea* 17
 lái *to come* 1
 lái I'll have (*colloquial*) 10
 lán(sè) (*de*) *blue* 7
 lǎo *old* 14
 lǎoshī *teacher* 1
 le *grammatical marker* 4
 lèi *tired, tiring* 9
 lěng *cold* 20
 lí *distance from* 7

- lǐ *inside* 18
 lì *pill* 17
 liàng *two (of anything)* 4
 liang (*measure word for vehicles (inc. bicycles)*) 18
 liang(kuai) *cold, cool* 16
 lianxí *to practise; exercise* 14
 líng *zero* 3
 líng (*brakes*) *work well* 18
 líng yí gè *another; another one* 18
 lǐnghuó *flexible* 15
 lǐnyù *shower* 12
 lìshǐ *history* 19
 liúli *fluent* 19
 liúxuéshēng *overseas student* 21
 lóu *floor; building* 7
 lóushàng *upstairs* 14
 lóuxià *downstairs* 14
 lù *road, street* 3
 lǜ(sè) (*de*) *green* 7
 lǚguǎn *hotel* 12
 Lúndūn *London* 3
 lǚxíng *to travel; travel* 14
 lǚxíngtuán *tourist group* 14
 lǚyóu *to travel* 21
 ma (*question particle*) 1
 máfan (*to*) *trouble* 12
 mǎi *to buy* 6
 mài *to sell* 7
 mǎlù *road* 9
 māma *mum, mother* 4
 màn *slow* 8
 mǎnyì *satisfied* 21
 màn zǒu *take care (as in goodbye; lit. walk slowly)* 16
 màoxiǎn *adventurous; to take the risk* 9
 máoyī *woollen pullover* 7
 mápó dòufu *spicy beancurd/tofu* 10
 mǎshàng *at once* 18
 méi *no, not, (have not)* 2
 měi *every* 8
 měi *beautiful* 20
 měi guānxi *it's OK, it doesn't matter* 2
 Měiguó *USA* 3
 méi shénme *it's nothing, don't mention it* 9
 měi tiān *every day* 8
 méi wèntí *no problem* 6
 mèimei *younger sister* 4
 měiyuán *US dollar* 12
 mén *door* 5
 míngbai *to understand* 13
 míngnián *next year* 5
 míngpiàn *namecard* 3
 míngtiān *tomorrow* 1
 míngtiān jiàn *see you tomorrow* 1
 míngxìnpìan *postcard* 15
 míngzi *name* 2
 mínzú *nationality* 19
 mō(mo) *to feel, touch* 8
 mùqián *at present, currently* 15
 ná *to take, to fetch* 17
 nǎr?/nǎlǐ? *where?* 3
 nǎ/něi *which?* 7
 nǎ/něi zhǒng? *which kind?* 13
 nà/nèi *that* 2
 nǎi *milk* 12
 nǎilào *cheese* 12
 nǎli nǎli *not really (response to a compliment)* 8
 nàme *in that case, then* 6
 nán *male* 2
 nán *difficult* 6
 nán *south* 9
 nánfāng *the south* 20

nánkàn *ugly* 8
 nánshuō *difficult to say* 21
 nàr/nàli *there* 9
 ne *question particle* 2
 nèibiān *over there* 15
 néng *to be able to, can* 12
 nǐ *you (singular)* 1
 nián *year* 11
 niánqīng *young* 14
 nǐde *your* 2
 nǐmen *you (plural)* 1
 nín *you (polite form)* 2
 niúròu *beef* 12
 nǚ'ér *daughter* 4
 nuǎn(huo) *warm* 20

Ōuzhōu (dàlù) (*continental Europe*) 18
 ousyuan *euro* 15

pà *afraid* 9
 pái *row (of seats)* 14
 pàng *fat* 10
 péngyou *friend* 2
 piàn(r) *tablets* 17
 piányi *cheap* 8
 piào *ticket* 3
 piàoliang *beautiful* 2
 píjiǔ *beer* 16
 píngguǒ *apple* 7
 píng(zi) *bottle* 17
 pípa *a musical instrument* 19
 pútao *grapes* 7
 pútáojiǔ *wine* 10
 pùtōnghuà *common language, Chinese (Mandarin)* 19

qí *to ride* 9
 qǐ *to get up* 14
 qiān *thousand* 7
 qián *money* 6
 qián *front, ahead* 9

qiánbāo *purse/wallet* 18
 qiānxū *modest* 19
 qiānzhèng *visa* 14
 qiǎokèlì *chocolate(s)* 16
 qìchē *vehicle, bus* 9
 qìhòu *climate* 20
 qǐng *to invite; please* 1
 qǐngchu *clear* 8
 qǐng cài *vegetables* 10
 qíngtiān *sunny (day)* 20
 qìngzhù *to celebrate* 21
 qiūtiān *autumn* 14
 qìwēn (*weather temperature*) 20
 qū *district, area* 3
 qù *to go to* 5
 qǔ qián *withdraw money* 15
 qǔkuǎnji *ATM* 15

ràng *to let, allow* 10
 ránhòu *afterwards* 6
 rè *hot* 10
 rén *person* 3
 rénmen *people (in general)* 16
 rénmín *the people (of a country)* 19
 rénmínbì *Chinese currency* 13
 rènsi *to recognize, to know (people)* 2
 rènwéi *to think, believe* 14
 Riběn *Japan* 3
 róngyì *easy* 6
 ròu *meat* 10
 ruǎnwò *soft sleeper* 13
 ruǎnzuo *soft seat* 13
 rúguǒ *if* 12

sàn bù *to stroll* 14
 sǎnmíngzhì *sandwich* 12
 shān *mountain* 21

shāndìché *mountain bike* 18
 shàng *on* 5
 shàng *to board (a vehicle)* 13
 shàng cì *last time* 10
 shàng wǎng *to use the internet* 15
 shàngwǔ *morning* 5
 shǎo *few; less* 10
 shǎoshù (mínzú) (*national minority*) 19
 shéi /shuí? *who?* 2
 shéide? *whose?* 18
 shēnfēnzhèng *identity card* 18
 shēng *tone (e.g. dì-yī'èr shēng the first/second tone)* 19
 shēngdiào *tones* 19
 shēngrì *birthday* 5
 shēngyì *business* 21
 shénme shíhou? *when, what time?* 6
 shénme yàng de? *what kind?* 12
 shénme? *what?* 2
 shēntǐ *health, body* 10
 shì *to be* 2
 shìchǎng *market* 7
 shìfū *title used when addressing a craftsman (lit. master)* 18
 shìhé *to suit* 7
 shíjiān *time* 5
 shìjiè (shàng) (*in the world*) 18
 shìqing *matter, issue, thing* 16
 shìshi *to try* 7
 shōu *to accept, receive* 10
 shǒu *hand* 18
 shòu *thin* 14
 shǒujī *mobile (phone)* 21

shōujù *receipt* 15
 shū *book* 15
 shūfu *comfortable* 9
 shuǐ *water* 12
 shuì *to sleep* 13
 shuǐguǒ *fruit* 16
 shuō *to speak, to say* 2
 shūshu *uncle (on father's side or someone of his father's generation)* 16
 sì jì *four seasons* 20
 sòng lái *to send over (to the speaker)* 12
 sòng qù *to send over (away from the speaker)* 12
 suàn-cuò le *calculated wrongly* 10
 Sūgélán *Scotland* 3
 ... suì ... *years old, age* 4
 suíbiàn *casually* 10
 suǒ (measure word for schools, houses, etc.) 21
 suǒyǐ *so, therefore* 13
 suǒyǒude *all* 16

tā *she, he, it* 1
 tāde *his, her, its* 2
 tài... le! *too...!* 7
 tàitai *Mrs, wife* 1
 tāmen *they, them* 21
 tán *to talk, to chat* 14
 tán liàn'ài *to be in love, go steady (lit. talk love)* 14
 tán(yi)tán *to talk (a bit) about* 21
 tāng *soup* 10
 táng *sugar* 12
 tānzi *stall* 10
 tè *extremely (colloquial)* 20
 tèkuài *special express (train)* 13
 téng *pain; painful* 17

- tèsè *feature, characteristic* 21
 tiān *day* 9
 tián *to fill (in a form)* 12
 tián (de) *sweet* 7
 tiānqi *weather* 10
 tiánshí *dessert* 16
 tiào disíkē *to go to a disco* 14
 tiào wǔ *to dance* 14
 tiáojiàn *condition* 12
 tīng *to listen to, (attend concert)* 6
 tīng (measure word for cans (of drink)) 10
 tǐng *quite, fairly* 14
 tīngshuō *I heard, I am told* 9
 tóngshì(men) *colleague(s)* 21
 tóngxué(men) *fellow student(s)* 21
 tōngzhī *to inform* 18
 tóu téng *headache* 17
 tóuděng (piào) *first-class (ticket)* 13
 tóupán *starter* 16
 tuìxiū *to retire* 9
 wàiguó *foreign country* 16
 wàiguó-rén *foreigner* 16
 wàizǐ qìyè *foreign enterprise* 21
 wǎn *bowl* 10
 wàn *ten thousand* 21
 wǎn'ān *good night* 12
 wán(r) *(Chinese medicine) ball* 17
 wǎnfān *dinner, supper* 12
 wǎng *in the direction of* 9
 wǎnshàng *evening* 5
 wèi (measure word for person (polite)) 2
 wèi *for (formal)* 16
 wèi... gān bēi! *to... (used in a toast)* 16
 Wēi'ěrsì *Wales* 3
 wèishēng *hygiene, hygienic* 10
 wèishénme? *why?* 12
 wēixiǎn *dangerous* 9
 wèizi *seat* 14
 wēn *warm* 17
 wén *language, writing* 19
 wèn *to ask* 1
 wénhuà *culture* 21
 wèntí *question, problem* 6
 wénxué *literature* 19
 wǒ *I, me* 2
 wǒde *my* 2
 wǒmen *we, us* 2
 xī *west* 9
 xià chē *to get off (a vehicle)* 9
 xià qí *to play chess* 14
 xià xuě *to snow (lit. descend snow)* 20
 xià yǔ *to rain (lit. descend rain)* 8, 20
 xià(yí)ge *next* 9
 xiān *first* 6
 xiàndàihuà (de) *modern* 16
 xiāng *fragrant* 16
 xiǎng *would like to; to think* 6
 xiǎng *to miss, long for* 20
 xiàng *to (look) like* 4
 Xiānggǎng *Hong Kong* 9
 xiāngjiāo *bananas* 7
 xiǎngyào *would like* 12
 xiànjīn *cash* 10
 xiànmù *to envy* 9
 xiānsheng *Mr; husband; gentleman* 1
 xiànzài *now* 5

- xiǎo *little, young, small* 1
 xiǎojiē *Miss, young lady* 2
 xiǎoshí *hour* 12
 xiǎoxi *news, information* 18
 xiàtiān *summer* 14
 xiàwǔ *afternoon* 5
 xiě *to write* 19
 xièxie (nǐ) *to thank; thank you* 1
 Xīfāng *the West, western* 6
 xíguàn *habit, customs* 16
 xihuan *to like* 3
 xīn *new* 8
 xìn *letter* 15
 xīnfēng *envelope* 15
 xíng *OK* 9
 xìng *surname* 2
 xīngqī *week* 5
 xìngqu *interest* 19
 xìntǒng *postbox, mailbox* 15
 xīnxiān *fresh* 7
 xìnyòng kǎ *credit card* 10
 xiōngdì *brothers* 4
 xiū *to repair* 12
 xiūxi *to rest* 6
 xīwàng *to hope; hope* 16
 Xīyào *Western medicine* 17
 Xīyī *Western medical (doctor)* 17
 xǐzǎojiān *bathroom* 12
 xuǎnzé *to choose* 12
 xuě *snow* 20
 xuésheng *student* 19
 xué(xí) *to study, to learn* 8
 xuéxiào *school* 21
 yǎn *to act* 14
 yànhuì *banquet* 17
 yánjiū *to study, to research* 19
 yánsè *colour* 8
 yànwō *birds' nest* 16
 yào *it takes...* 9
 yào *to want, to need; will* 6
 yào *medicine* 17
 yàofāng *prescription* 17
 yàofāng *pharmacy* 17
 yàoshi *key* 12
 yàoshi *if* 18
 yě *also* 2
 yè *page* 15
 yí ge... yí ge *one..., the other* 4
 yí kè *a quarter (time)* 5
 yìbān *usually* 12
 yìbānláishuō *generally speaking* 20
 Yìdàlì *Italy* 8
 yìdiǎn(r) *a little* 2
 yídìng *certainly, definitely* 12
 yígòng *altogether* 10
 yìhòu *later, in future; after* 8
 yìhuì(r) *a short while* 12
 yǐjīng *already* 5
 yīliáo *medical care* 17
 Yīngguó *England* 3
 Yīngwén *English (language)* 2
 yìngwò *hard sleeper* 13
 yíngyèbù *branch (of a bank)* 15
 yìngzuò *hard seat* 13
 yínháng *bank* 6
 yǐnliào *drinks* 12
 yīntiān *cloudy (day)* 20
 yīnwei/yīnwéi *because* 20
 yīnxiàng *impression* 21
 yīnyuè *music* 6
 yīnyuèhuì *concert* 6
 yìqǐ *together* 9
 yìqián *before, in the past* 8
 yìqiè *everything* 21

- yīshēng *doctor* 17
 yìsi *meaning* 3
 yǐwéi/yīnwéi *to think, to assume* 5
 yīwùsuǒ *clinic* (attached to a work unit) 17
 yìxiē *some* 17
 yíyàng *same* 6
 yīyuàn *hospital* 17
 yìzhí *all the time* 21
 yòng *to use; to need* 9
 yǒu *to have* 2
 yòu *right* (the opposite of left) 18
 yòubiān *right side* 18
 yòu... yòu... *both... and...* 8
 yǒu shíhòu *sometimes* 17
 yǒu xiào *effective* 17
 yǒu yìdiǎn(r) *a little* 8
 yǒu yíngyǎng *nutritious* 16
 yǒu yìsi *interesting* 6
 yǒude *some* 15
 yǒuhǎo *friendly* 21
 yóujú *post office* 15
 yóulǎn *sightseeing* 13
 yóupiào *stamp* 15
 yǒuyì *friendship* 16
 yóuyǒng *to swim* 14
 yú *fish* 10
 yǔ *rain* 20
 yǔ(yán) *language* 19
 yuǎn *far* 7
 yuànyì *would like to, to be willing to* 15
 yuányīn *reason* 12
 yùbào *forecast* 20
 yùdìng *to book* (a table, a room) 10
 yuè *month* 5
 yuè... yuè... *the more... the more...* 13

- yuè lái yuè... *more and more...* 21
 Yuèán *Vietnam* 3
 yǔfǎ *grammar* 19
 yúkuài *happy, pleasant* 19
 yúlè *entertainment* 14
 yùndòng *sports, to take exercise* 14
 yùndòngguì *sports meet, games* 14
 yùyīn *pronunciation* 19
 zài *to be at/in* 1
 zài (indicating continuing action) 6
 zàijiàn *goodbye* 1
 zájì *acrobatics* 6
 zánmen *we/us* (including listener) 7
 zǎo *early* 14
 zǎocān/zǎofàn *breakfast* 12
 zǎo jiù *for a long time, ages ago, for ages* 8
 zǎoshang *morning* 5
 zěnmē? *how?* 9
 zěnmeyàng? *how is it? how about it?* 8
 zhā *to pierce, to put in a needle, to do acupuncture* 17
 zhá *brakes* 18
 zhàn (bus) *stop, station* 7
 zhàn xiàn (line) *engaged* 15
 zhāng (measure word for flat objects) 8
 zhàntái *platform* 5
 zhǎo *to look for* 12
 zhǎo (qián) *to give change* 13
 zhàoxiàngjī *camera* 18

- zhè/zhèi *this* 2
 zhèxiē/nèixiē *these/those* 15
 zhème (guì) *so (expensive)* 7
 zhè *real, really* 2
 zhè *unfortunate! how* 18
 zhè *unfortunate! bad luck!* 18
 zhède *really* 4
 zhèngcān *main course* 16
 zhèngzhǒng *just right (amount)* 15
 zhèngtiān *all day* 14
 zhèngzài *at this moment* 12
 zhēnjiǔ *acupuncture* 17
 zhēnsuǒ *clinic (open to the general public)* 17
 zhèr *here, this place* 7
 zhéxué *philosophy* 19
 zhèyàng *like this, in this way* 17
 zhī (measure word for cigarettes) 10
 zhǐ *only* 10
 zhǐ *to refer to* 19
 zhǐ yào *only need/cost* 8
 zhīdao *to know* 5
 zhíjiē *direct(ly)* 17
 zhíkùai *express (train)* 13
 zhìliàng *quality* 8
 zhīpiào *cheque, check* 10
 zhǐyào... jiù... *so long as... then...* 19
 zhǒng *kind, sort (measure word)* 17
 Zhōngguó *China* 3
 Zhōngguóchéng *Chinatown* 16
 Zhōngguó-rén *Chinese* 3
 Zhōngwén *Chinese (language)* 2
 zhōngwǔ *noon* 5
 Zhōngyào *Chinese medicine* 17
 Zhōngyī *Chinese medical (doctor)* 17
 zhōumò *weekend* 5
 zhù (nǐ) *to wish (you)* 5
 zhù (zài) *to live (in/at a place)* 3
 zhuǎn *to change to (extension)* 15
 zhuàng *to collide* 18
 zhuàng-huài(le) *damage(ed)* 18
 zhuānkē *special, specialized; speciality* 17
 zhǔyì *idea* 8
 zì (Chinese) *character* 11
 zìjǐ *oneself* 14
 zìxíngchē *bicycle* 9
 zìxíngchē dào *bicycle lane* 18
 zìyóu *free, freedom* 7
 zōngjiào *religion* 21
 zǒngshì *always* 18
 zǒu *to leave* 12
 zǒu (lù) *to walk, on foot* 7
 zū *to hire, to rent* 18
 zuì *the most* 7
 zuìhòu *last* 16
 zuìjìn *recent, recently* 14
 zuǒ *left* 18
 zuò *to sit* 1
 zuò *to do* 6
 zuò (fàn) *to cook* 16
 zuò chē *to take the bus* 6
 zuò kè *to be a guest* 16
 zuò qìgōng *to do qìgōng* 6
 zuǒshǒu *left-hand* 16
 zúqiú *football* 8

English-Chinese

afternoon xiàwǔ
 afterwards ránhòu
 alcohol jiǔ
 all + noun suǒyǒude +
 noun
 all, both dōu
 already yǐjīng
 also yě
 always zǒngshì
 America Měiguó
 apple píngguǒ
 arrangement; to arrange
 ānpái
 to ask wèn
 assistant, housestaff
 fúwùyuán
 autumn qiūtiān

 bag bāo
 bank yínháng
 banquet yànhuì
 bathroom xǐzǎojiān
 to be shì
 to be at/in zài
 beautiful měi, piàoliang
 because yīnwei
 beer pījiǔ
 before yǐqián
 bicycle zìxíngchē
 big dà
 birthday shēngrì
 black hēi(sè) (de)
 blue lán(sè) (de)
 to board (a vehicle) shàng
 (chē)
 boiled water kāishuǐ
 book shū
 to book (a ticket) dīng
 (piào)
 both dōu
 bottle píngzi
 breakfast zǎocān/zǎofàn

broken, not working; bad
 huài
 bus gōnggòng qìchē
 business shēngyì
 but kěshì
 to buy mǎi

 to call, to be called jiào
 camera zhàoxiàngjī
 can, be able to néng
 can, know how to huì
 car qìchē
 cash xiànjīn
 CD guāngpán
 certainly, definitely yíding
 to change huàn
 to change money huàn qián
 cheap piányi
 cheers! gān bēi!
 cheque, check zhīpiào
 child/children háizi
 China Zhōngguó
 Chinese (language)
 Zhōngwén
 Chinese characters Hànzì
 chocolate(s) qiǎokèlì
 to choose xuǎnzé
 chopsticks kuàizi
 city chéngshì
 clean gānjìng
 clear qīngchū
 clever cōngmíng
 to close (door) guān (mén)
 coach (vehicle)
 chángtú qìchē
 coffee kāfēi
 cold lěng
 cold, cool liáng(kuai)
 colleague tóngshì
 to come lái
 to come back huí lái
 comfortable shūfu

company gōngsī
 concert yīnyuèhuì
 convenient fāngbiàn
 to cook zuò (fàn)
 cough; to cough késou
 country guójiā
 credit card xìnyòng kǎ
 crowded jǐ
 cup(ful) bēi

 dad, father bàba
 dangerous wēixiǎn
 laughter nǚ'ér
 day tiān
 to decide juéding
 delicious, tasty hǎochī (de)
 difficult nán
 dish cài
 to do zuò
 doctor yīshēng, dàifu
 don't bié
 door mén
 double room shuāngrén
 fángjiān
 downstairs lóuxià
 to drink hē
 to drive kāi

 early zǎo
 east dōng
 easy róngyì
 to eat chī
 economy jīngjì
 elder brother gēge
 elder sister jiějie
 e-mail diànzǐ yóujiàn
 embassy dàshǐguǎn
 English (language)
 Yīngwén
 to enter jìn
 euro ōuyuán
 every měi
 everyone dàjiā
 everything yíqiè

excuse me duibuqǐ
 expensive; honourable guì
 extremely fēicháng, tè

far yuǎn
 fast kuài
 fat pàng
 fault cuò
 fax chuánzhēn
 to feel, to think juéde
 few; less shǎo
 to fill (in a form) tián (biǎo)
 film, movie diànyǐng
 first xiān
 fish yú
 floor/storey lóu
 food, meal fàn
 football zúqiú
 for; to give gěi
 foreign country wàiguó
 foreign enterprise wàizī qǐyè
 form biǎo
 free; freedom zìyóu
 friend péngyou
 friendly yǒuhǎo
 friendship yǒuyì
 from cóng
 fruit shuǐguǒ

to get off the bus xià chē
 to go back huí qù
 to go to qù, dào
 good; well hǎo
 goodbye zàijiàn
 green lǜ(sè) (de)
 guest kèren

half bàn
 hand shǒu
 happy gāoxìng/kuàilè
 to have yǒu
 to have a cold gǎnmào
 to have diarrhoea lā dùzi
 he/she/it tā

headache tóu téng
 health, body shēntǐ
 health; healthy jiànkāng
 to help bāng
 here, this place zhèr
 to hire, to rent zū
 his, her, its tāde
 holiday, vacation jià(qī)
 home jiā
 to hope; hope xīwàng
 hospital yīyuàn
 hot rè
 hot, spicy là
 hotel fāndiàn, bīnguǎn,
 lǚguǎn
 hour xiǎoshí
 how far? duō yuǎn?
 how is it? how about
 it? zěnmeyàng?
 how much? how
 many? duōshao?
 how? zěnmē?
 hundred bǎi
 hungry è
 husband xiānsheng, àiren

 I, me wǒ
 idea zhùyì
 identity card shēnfènzhèng
 if rúguǒ, yàoshi
 illness bìng
 to inform tōngzhī
 inside lǐ
 interest xìngqu
 interesting yǒu yìsi
 international guójì
 interpreter, translator;
 fānyì
 to interpret, translate
 to introduce;
 introduction jièshào
 to invite; please qǐng

 joint venture hézī qǐyè

key yàoshi
 kilogram gōngjīn
 knife and fork dāochā
 to know (a fact) zhīdào
 to know (people) rènshi

 language yǔyán
 last zuìhòu
 later, after yǐhòu
 to leave; to walk zǒu
 left zuǒ
 to let, allow ràng
 letter xìn
 letter box xìnxiāng
 light(s) dēng
 to (look) like xiàng
 to like xǐhuan
 to listen to tīng
 a little yìdiǎn(r)
 little, young, small xiǎo
 to live (in/at a place)
 zhù (zài)
 long cháng
 to look at, watch kàn
 to look for zhǎo
 to lose diū
 to love; love ài

 male nán
 many; more duō
 to marry jié hūn
 meaning yìsi
 meat ròu
 medicine yào
 to meet jiàn miàn
 meeting huì
 menu càidān
 minute fēn(zhōng)
 Miss, young lady xiǎojie
 mobile (phone) shǒujī
 money qián
 month yuè
 morning shàngwǔ
 morning (early) zǎoshang

most zuì
 mountain shān
 mountain bike shāndìchē
 Mr; husband;
 gentleman xiānsheng
 Mrs; wife tàitai
 mum, mother māma
 music yīnyuè

 near jìn
 to need, must; it takes dēi
 new xīn
 news, information xiāoxi
 next xià(yí)ge
 nice looking hǎokàn
 no, not, (have not) méi
 noisy chǎo
 north běi
 not bù
 not bad, pretty good búcuò
 now xiànzài
 number hào
 number (telephone, telex,
 fax) hàomǎ
 nurse hùshi

 o'clock diǎn(zhōng)
 of course dāngrán
 often chángcháng
 old lǎo
 Olympic Games Àolínpìkè
 Yùndònghuì
 on shàng
 only zhǐ
 opportunity jīhuì
 opposite duìmiàn
 other biéde

 pain; painful téng
 park gōngyuán
 passport hùzhào
 to pay (money) fù qián
 peace héping
 person rén

pharmacy yàofáng
 place difang
 to plan dǎsuàn
 plane fēijī
 platform zhàntái
 pleasant, happy yúkuài
 police officer jǐngchá
 polite kèqi
 possible; possibly kěnéng
 to post jì
 post office yóujú
 postcard míngxìnpìàn
 to practise; exercise liànxí
 prescription yàofāng
 pretty good búcuò
 pound (money) (Yīng)bàng
 purse/wallet qiánbāo
 to put fàng

 question, problem wèntí
 quiet ānjìng

 rain yǔ
 to rain xià yǔ
 real; really zhēn
 really zhēnde
 reason yuányīn
 receipt shōujù
 recent; recently zuìjìn
 to recognize, to know
 (people) rènshi
 red hóng(sè) (de)
 to rest xiūxi
 to return something (to)
 huán (gěi)
 right (the opposite of left)
 yòu
 road, street lù
 room fángjiān

 safe ānquán
 same yíyàng
 sandwich sānmíngzhì
 satisfied mǎnyì

seat wèizi
to see kàn-jiàn
to see a doctor kàn bìng,
 kàn yīshēng
to seem hǎoxiàng
to sell mài
service fúwù
she, he, it tā
ship, boat chuán
*a short while, after a
 moment* yìhuǐ(r)
sightseeing yóulǎn
simple jiǎndān
to sing (a song) chàng (gē)
single room dānrén fángjiān
to sit zuò
size dàxiǎo
to sleep shuì
slow màn
to smoke (a cigarette)
 chōu (yān)
to snow xià xuě
so, therefore suǒyǐ
some yìxiē, yǒude
sometimes yǒu shíhou
son érzi
soup tāng
south nán
to speak, to say shuō
sports; to take exercise
 yùndòng
spring chūntiān
stamp yóupiào
to start kāishǐ
station, (bus) stop
 (chē) zhàn
still hái
to stroll sànbù
student xuésheng
to study, to learn xué(xí)
success; successful
 chénggōng
sugar táng
summer xiàtiān

sunny (day) qíngtiān
surname xìng
sweet tián (de)
to swim yóuyǒng

to take a holiday dù jià
to take the bus zuò chē
to take, to fetch ná
to talk, chat tán
taxi chūzū (qì)chē
tea chá
teacher lǎoshī
telephone diànhuà
to telephone dǎ diànhuà
television diànshì
to tell gàosu
to thank; thank you
 xièxie (nǐ)
that nà/nèi
there nàr/nàli
these/those zhèixiē/nèixiē
they, them tāmen
thin shòu
thing, matter, issue shìqing
thing, object dōngxi
to think, believe rènwéi
to think, to assume yǐwéi
this zhè/zhèi
this year jīnnián
thousand qiān
ticket piào
time shíjiān
time, occasion cì
tired, tiring lèi
to; to arrive, to go to dào
today jīntiān
together yìqǐ
toilet cèsuǒ
tomorrow míngtiān
too...! tài...le!
train huǒchē
transport, traffic jiāotōng
to travel; travel lǚxíng,
 lǚyóu

to try shìshì
to turn guǎi
TV diànshì
two (of anything) liǎng

underground, subway dìtiě
to understand dǒng,
 míngbai
university dàxué
upstairs lóushàng
to use yòng
US dollar měiyuán
usually yìbān

vegetables qīng cài
vehicle (bus, bike, car) chē
very hěn
video (tape) lùxiàngdài
visa qiānzhèng
visit; to visit (formal)
 fǎngwèn

to wait děng
to walk, on foot zǒu lù
to want (to), need, will
 yào
to want to, would like to;
 xiǎng
miss
warm nuǎn(huo)
water shuǐ
we, us wǒmen
weather tiānqì
week xīngqī
weekend zhōumò

to welcome; welcome
 huānyíng
west xī
what kind? shénme yàng
 de?
what? shénme?
when, what time? shénme
 shíhou?
where? nǎr?/nǎli?
which number? jǐ hào?
which? nǎ/něi?
white bái(sè) (de)
who? shéi/shuí?
whose? shéide?/shuíde?
why? wèishénme?
wife tàitai, àiren
wife (formal); madam fūren
wind fēng
wine pútáojiǔ
winter dōngtiān
to work; work gōngzuò
to write xiě

year nián
 ... *year (of age)* ... suì
yellow huáng(sè) (de)
yes, correct duì
you (singular) nǐ
you (polite form) nín
you (plural) nimen
young niánqing
younger brother dìdi
younger sister mèimei
your (singular) nǐde
your (plural) nimende

teach
yourself

mandarin chinese conversation

elizabeth scurfield & song lianyi

- Do you want to talk with confidence?
- Are you looking for basic conversation skills?
- Do you want to understand what people say to you?

Mandarin Chinese Conversation is a 3-hour, all-audio course to use at any time, whether you want a quick refresher before a trip or you are a complete beginner. The 20 dialogues on CDs 1 and 2 will teach you the Chinese you will need to speak and understand, without getting bogged down with grammar. CD 3, uniquely, teaches skills for listening and understanding. The perfect accompaniment to **Beginner's Chinese** and **Chinese** in the **teach yourself** range.

teach
yourself

chinese

elizabeth scurfield

Written for complete beginners, **Chinese** explains the complexities of spoken and written Modern Standard Chinese (otherwise known as Mandarin). Its logical and enthusiastic approach makes this notoriously difficult language straightforward and easy to learn.

Chinese has many unique features:

- You can decide whether or not to learn the script.
If you don't need it, just follow the *pinyin* transcriptions
- The summary of key grammar allows you to look up difficult points in seconds
- The extensive two-way vocabulary lists mean that this truly is a complete course in one volume

By the end of this course you will be able to take a fully active part in the life and culture of China and Chinese-speaking people everywhere.

teach
yourself

beginner's chinese script

elizabeth scurfield & song lianyi

- Are you interested in the Chinese script?
- Are you planning a business trip or holiday?
- Do you want to understand simple signs and notices in China?

Beginner's Chinese Script will help you get to grips with reading and writing simple Chinese, whether you are studying the language or planning a trip for business or pleasure. The step-by-step approach will build your confidence to read and write mainly simplified characters in a variety of real contexts.

teach
yourself

world cultures: china

kenneth wilkinson

- Are you interested in the story of China and the Chinese?
- Do you want to understand how the country works today?
- Are you planning a visit to China or learning Chinese?

World Cultures: China will give you a basic overview of China – the country, its language, its people and its culture – and will enrich any visit or course of study. Vocabulary lists and 'Taking it Further' sections at the end of every chapter will equip you to talk and write confidently about all aspects of Chinese life.